

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

Twentieth Meeting
of the

**SECRETARY'S ADVISORY COMMITTEE
ON
GENETICS, HEALTH, AND SOCIETY
(SACGHS)**

+ + +

**Thursday
October 8, 2009**

- VOLUME I -

+ + +

Park Hyatt Hotel
Washington, DC

PARTICIPANTS:**Committee Members**Committee Chair**Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.**

Chief Science Officer

Los Angeles County Department of Health

Mara Aspinall, M.B.A. [by telephone]

President and CEO

Vivir Biosciences

Sylvia Mann Au, M.S., C.G.C.

Hawaii State Genetics Coordinator

Genetics Program

Hawaii Department of Health

Paul Billings, M.D., Ph.D., F.A.C.P., F.A.C.M.G.

GeneSage Inc.

Director and Chief Science Officer

Genomic Medicine Institute

David Dale, M.D.

Professor of Medicine

University of Washington

Gwen Darien

Director

Survivor and Patient Advocacy

American Association for Cancer Research

Rochelle Dreyfuss, M.A., J.D. [by telephone]

Pauline Newman Professor of Law

New York University School of Law

James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D.

Professor of Genetics and Medicine

Director of Clinical Cancer Genetics and the

Bryson Program in Human Genetics

Departments of Medicine and Genetics

University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill

Andrea Ferreira-Gonzalez, Ph.D.

Professor of Pathology

Director, Molecular Diagnostics Laboratory

Virginia Commonwealth University

PARTICIPANTS *(continued)*:**Julio Licinio, M.D.**

Professor and Chairman
Miller School of Medicine
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences
University of Miami

Barbara Burns McGrath, R.N., Ph.D.

Research Associate Professor
School of Nursing
University of Washington

Samuel Nussbaum, M.D.

Executive Vice President
Clinical Health Policy
Chief Medical Officer
WellPoint, Inc.

Charmaine D. M. Royal, Ph.D.

Associate Research Professor
Institute for Genome Sciences and Policy (IGSP)
Duke University

Sheila Walcoff, J.D.

Partner
McDermott, Will & Emery, LLP

Marc S. Williams, M.D., F.A.A.P., F.A.C.M.G.

Director
Clinical Genetics Institute
InterMountain Healthcare

Paul Wise, M.D., M.P.H.

Richard E. Behrman Professor of Child Health and Society
Stanford University

Ex Officios

Department of Commerce**Michael Amos, Ph.D.**

Scientific Advisor
Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory
National Institute of Standards and Technology

PARTICIPANTS *(continued)*:

Department of Defense

Adam B. Kanis, M.D., Ph.D.

Lieutenant Colonel, Medical Corps, U.S. Army
Chief, Medical Genetics
Tripler Army Medical Center
Department of Pediatrics

Department of Health and Human Services

Naomi Goldstein, Ph.D.

Director
Office of Planning, Research and Evaluation
Administration for Children and Families

Gurvaneet Randhawa, M.D., M.P.H.

Medical Officer
Center for Outcomes and Evidence (COE)
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality

Muin Khoury, M.D, Ph.D.

Deputy Director
Office of Public Health Genomics
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

Barry M. Straube, M.D.

Chief Medical Officer
Office of Clinical Standards and Quality
Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services

Alan E. Guttmacher, M.D.

Acting Director
National Human Genome Research Institute

Robinsue Frohboese, J.D., Ph.D.

Principal Deputy Director
Office for Civil Rights

Michael A. Carome, M.D.

Associate Director for Regulatory Affairs
Office for Human Research Protections
Acting Ex Officio
Office of Public Health and Science

Federal Trade Commission

Sarah Botha, J.D.

Attorney
Bureau of Consumer Protection
Division of Advertising Practices

PARTICIPANTS *(continued)*:

SACGHS Staff

Executive Secretary**Sarah Carr**

NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

Laura Lyman Rodriguez, Ph.D.

NIH

Cathy Fomous, Ph.D.

Senior Health Policy Analyst

NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

Kathryn Camp

Senior Health Policy Analyst

NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

Darren Greninger

Senior Health Policy Analyst

NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

Michele Lloyd-Puryear

SACHDNC

Sharon Alexander

EEOC

Douglas Olsen

Veterans' Affairs

Elizabeth Mansfield

HHS/FDA

Amy Turner

DOL

Jeff Roche

HHS/CMS

PARTICIPANTS *(continued)*:**Speakers****Amy Turner, J.D.**

Senior Advisor and Special Projects Manager
Employee Benefits Security Administration
Department of Labor

Russ Weinheimer, J.D.

Senior Counsel, Office of the Chief Counsel
Internal Revenue Service
Department of Treasury

James Mayhew, J.D.

Director, Division of Private Health Insurance
Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services
Department of Health and Human Services

Robinsue Frohboese, J.D., Ph.D.

Principal Deputy Director

Christina Heide, J.D.

Senior Health Information Private Policy Specialist
Office for Civil Rights
Department of Health and Human Services

Kerry Leibig, J.D.

Senior Attorney Advisor
Office of Legal Counsel
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission

CONTENTS

	<u>Page No.</u>
Opening Remarks	
Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.	9
Genetics Information Nondiscrimination Act	
Update on the Implementation of the Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act (Public Law 110-233)	25
Title 1 - Genetic Nondiscrimination in Health Insurance	
Employment-Based Group Market Provisions	
Amy Turner J.D. and Russ Weinheimer, J.D.	25
Individual Insurance Market Provisions	
James Mayhew, J.D.	69
Privacy and Confidentiality	
Robinsue Frohboese, J.D., Ph.D. and Christina Heide, J.D.	75
Title II - Prohibiting Employment Discrimination on the Basis of Genetic Information	
Kerry Leibig	86
<u>Gene Patents and Licensing Practices</u>	
Overview of Report, Summary of Public Comments on Draft Report, and Session Goals James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D., SACGHS Member.....	122
<u>Public Comment Session</u>	
Jennifer Leib Association for Molecular Pathology	170
Tom DeLenge Biotechnology Industry Organization	176
Fay Shamanski College of American Pathologists	198
Michael Henry Athena Diagnostics	202

CONTENTS *(continued)*

Michael Remington Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation	226
<u>Gene Patents and Licensing Practices</u>	
Discussion of Final Draft Recommendations Facilitators: Dr. Teutsch and Dr. Evans	232
Closing Remarks	
Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.....	401
Adjournment	409

1 PROCEEDINGS

2 [8:36 a.m.]

3 Opening Remarks

4 Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.

5 DR. TEUTSCH: Good morning, and welcome to the
6 meeting of the Secretary's Advisory Committee on
7 Genetics, Health, and Society.

8 It seems like if we're having the 20th, we
9 should have some sort of a celebration and it's nice to
10 be in this lovely venue. It's a change from the Humphrey
11 Building. So hopefully everyone will have a chance to
12 enjoy that, and I can tell you it's a delight for me to
13 be talking about H1N1 all day. So this is a welcome
14 change.

15 The public was made aware of this meeting.
16 Three notices in the Federal Register as well as
17 announcements on the SACGHS Website and Listserv. We
18 want to welcome all of the members of the public who are
19 in attendance as well as those of you who are tuning in
20 via the webcast. Thank you for your interest in our
21 work.

22 We will have scheduled public comments at 11:45

1 this morning and tomorrow again at 10:15 in the morning
2 and, as always, we look forward to input from the public.

3 We have a full agenda for this meeting and
4 several topics before us and some decisions we made to
5 make. We'll begin this morning with an Update on
6 Implementation of GINA, the Genetic Information
7 Nondiscrimination Act. We are really pleased to have all
8 the agencies that have been involved with the
9 implementation process here today to report on the status
10 of their efforts to promulgate the rules needed to
11 implement the law's protection.

12 The rest of today's meeting will be devoted to
13 review and discussion of the Committee's Final Draft
14 Report on Gene Patents and Licensing Practices.

15 We've also set aside tomorrow afternoon for
16 this issue, if we need it, and our goal is to come to
17 agreement on the recommendations and approve the report
18 for transmittal to the Secretary. So it will be an
19 important discussion and I am counting on a lot of
20 interest from the disparate views on this topic.

21 Tomorrow, we'll consider a proposal related to
22 the ethical implications of genomic data-sharing, discuss

1 the Findings and Draft Recommendations of the Genetics
2 Education and Training Task Force, and review the Revised
3 Draft Paper on Direct-to-Consumer Genetic Testing.

4 Our goals are to decide on next steps for our
5 priority topic in data-sharing, approve the DTC paper to
6 send to the Secretary, and provide input on the Draft
7 Recommendations for the Report on Genetics Education and
8 Training. So we have a lot to accomplish.

9 Before we move to our first agenda item, I
10 would like to inform you of a couple of items.

11 First, I want to report that last month I met
12 with Dr. Francis Collins. Given NIH's role in managing
13 SACGHS, I thought it would be important to brief Francis
14 in his new role as the NIH Director. As those of you who
15 have been on this committee know, Francis was the NIH Ex
16 Officio to this committee until his departure last year.

17 So our meeting was really an opportunity to update him
18 on our work and on the priority issues we've decided to
19 take up.

20 It also gave us a chance to get his
21 perspectives on the critical issues within genetics and
22 genomics and how we could be helpful to the department's

1 priorities.

2 Francis emphasized that we should continue to
3 be forward-looking and to anticipate issues that will
4 arise as -- oh, I see my name. I've become Barbara, but
5 we can fix that. There's got to be truth in advertising
6 here.

7 He asked that we anticipate issues that will
8 arise as genomics moves forward, particularly whole
9 genomic sequencing and how it is integrated into
10 healthcare and public health.

11 He suggested that it would be fruitful to focus
12 on the implications of the affordable genome, comparative
13 effectiveness and the economic value of technological
14 innovations and was pleased that we were already taking
15 up the comparative effectiveness issue and thought it was
16 important to consider the meaning of the word "benefit."

17 With regards to the implications of the
18 affordable genome sequence, you'll recall that during
19 last year's priority-setting process, the Committee
20 identified this as a high-priority issue but decided to
21 incorporate it as part of the study area on genetics and
22 the future of the healthcare system.

1 The sessions we held earlier this year on the
2 healthcare system focused on issues of a more immediate
3 nature, such as coverage and reimbursement of genetic
4 technologies and barriers to access in genetic services.

5 I would like us to consider addressing the
6 implications of an affordable genome as a discrete topic
7 and, finally, Francis encouraged us to publish a paper
8 highlighting prior SACGHS recommendations to help gain
9 recognition for the Committee's work.

10 If we have time at the end of the meeting, we
11 will begin a discussion of these items before we adjourn.

12 In September, we finalized our letter to
13 Secretary Sebelius on genetic-related priorities that
14 support healthcare reform. These priorities included
15 ensuring that health information systems are capable of
16 securely storing, transmitting, and receiving genomic
17 data, that comparative effectiveness research recognizes
18 that the effectiveness of interventions may vary among
19 genetic subpopulations, and that Centers for Medicare and
20 Medicaid Services use a transparent and evidence-based
21 process for the coverage and reimbursement of genetic
22 tests, and that the value of genetic services is

1 recognized as changes are considered to remunerate
2 primary care and cognitive services.

3 The NIH Director has transmitted the letter to
4 the Secretary's Office.

5 I also want to report that the Committee's
6 Clinical Utility and Comparative Effectiveness Research
7 Task Force held its first teleconference in late July.
8 The members discussed two reports on comparative
9 effectiveness research, one prepared by the IOM and one
10 by the Federal Coordinating Council for Comparative
11 Effectiveness Research. The Task Force also discussed
12 NIH and AHRQ activities in the area of comparative
13 effectiveness.

14 The Task Force is awaiting public release of
15 the Secretary's Fiscal Year 2009 Operating Plan for the
16 \$700 million in funds for comparative effectiveness
17 research allocation under the American Recovery and
18 Reinvestment Act. After review of this plan, the Task
19 Force intends to identify and discuss particular policy
20 issues the Committee could explore in the area of
21 comparative effectiveness research.

22 In the meantime, NIH has issued \$360 million in

1 ARRA grants to support CER, Comparative Effectiveness
2 Research. A number of them are focused on genomics, and
3 I thought since many of you may not have heard of what
4 was funded, I would give you a few examples.

5 Scott Ramsey at the University of Michigan
6 received funding for his Center for Comparative
7 Effectiveness Research in cancer genomics. Katrina
8 Armstrong at the University of Pennsylvania was funded
9 for comparative effectiveness in genomic medicine. David
10 Fenstermacher at Moffett Cancer Center and Research
11 Institute was funded for developing information
12 infrastructure focused on cancer comparative
13 effectiveness.

14 John Finjue at Wake Forest will be doing work
15 on clinical validity and utility of genomic targeted
16 chemoprevention of prostate cancer. Jeff Ginsburg at
17 Duke will be working on programs in clinical
18 effectiveness of cancer pharmacogenomics, and Katrina
19 Goddard at Kaiser Foundation Research Institute will be
20 looking at comparative effectiveness in genomic and
21 personalized medicine for colon cancer.

22 I also want to take note of developments of

1 interest at our ex-officio agencies. Last week, we
2 learned that the Federal Trade Commission investigated
3 two companies, the General X Corporation and Sayona, for
4 their promotion of a direct-to-consumer neutrogenetic
5 service called Myself Program, which involved the
6 analysis of specific genetic variations.

7 The companies claimed that the test results
8 could significantly affect consumers' health outcomes and
9 enable consumers to achieve long-term or permanent weight
10 loss. According to FTC letters to these companies, which
11 were sent in August and posted about two weeks ago on the
12 FTC website, General X is no longer marketing the Myself
13 Program and Sayona has ceased operations all together.

14 We appreciate the FTC's actions and hope that
15 investigators will examine other DTC tests with
16 questionable claims. We also hope that FTC's actions
17 will serve as a reminder to other companies that claims
18 must be substantiated. Copies of the FTC letters are in
19 your table folders and available for members of the
20 public. We'll hear more about them in tomorrow's session
21 on DTC Testing.

22 I also wanted to applaud the efforts of the

1 Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services for its
2 progress on proposed rulemaking for laboratory
3 proficiency testing programs that are required under the
4 Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments or CLIA.

5 This effort addresses one of the
6 recommendations of the SACGHS Oversight Report. CMS
7 plans to re-evaluate the current list of analytes and
8 mandated proficiency testing for laboratories that use
9 these analytes and identify scientifically valid
10 mechanisms to select new analytes and update the analyte
11 list periodically as the environment and technologies
12 change. Genetic and molecular tests will be included in
13 this evaluation, as well.

14 CMS will utilize the CLIA Advisory Committee or
15 CLIAC in the process of convening an expert working group
16 for this effort. It has gathered a working group of
17 outstanding individuals and who represent proficiency
18 testing programs, laboratories, accrediting agencies,
19 government agencies, and subject matter experts in
20 laboratory specialty areas, including genetic testing.
21 The first CLIAC Working Group meeting is planning for
22 early 2010.

1 Finally, the National Human Genome Research
2 Institute held a State of The Science Conference in
3 August on Family History. The conference panel included
4 in its draft statement that, while family history plays
5 an important role in the practice of medicine because it
6 may motivate positive lifestyle changes, enhance
7 individual empowerment, and influence clinical
8 interventions, substantial research will be needed before
9 a systematically collected family history for common
10 diseases can become an evidence-based tool in primary
11 care.

12 The panel recommended research in the following
13 areas: the structure or characteristics of a family
14 history, the process of acquiring a family history, and
15 outcomes of family history acquisition, interpretation,
16 and application.

17 Committee members can find the Draft Statement
18 in the briefing books under Tab 8. For attendees from
19 the public, there is a handout with information where to
20 find the Draft Statement on the NIH website, as well.

21 A number of meetings are taking place this
22 month that are of interest to SACGHS. Information about

1 these meetings is in your table folders and provided in
2 the handout for the public.

3 On October 15th, the Office of The Secretary is
4 sponsoring a workshop entitled Identifying Opportunities
5 to Maximize the Utility of Genomics Research Data Through
6 Electronic Health Information Exchange. That's an awful
7 lot for this early in the morning for someone from
8 California. The purpose of the workshop is to discuss
9 data standard requirements for clinical genetics and
10 obstacles to their development and adoption. Andrea
11 Ferreira-Gonzalez and Charmaine Royale will be attending
12 this meeting on our behalf.

13 The next meeting of the Health Information
14 Technology Standards Committee is October 14th, and the
15 Health Information Technology Policy Committee meets the
16 end of the month, the 27th and 28th. The public can
17 participate in these advisory committee meetings by web
18 conference.

19 On the 26th and 27th, the American Association
20 for the Advancement of Science and the Food and Drug Law
21 Institute are co-sponsoring a two-day Colloquium on
22 Personalized Medicine in an area of healthcare reform.

1 The agenda includes presentations on policies associated
2 with comparative effectiveness research, health
3 information technology and research and clinical practice
4 and the status of biomarker discovery and use in clinical
5 practice.

6 I also want to highlight a new CDC/NIH
7 initiative called Genomic Applications in Practice and
8 Prevention Network, GAPNET, one of things William's been
9 working on of his many nets, which is a collaborative
10 effort initiated by CDC's Office of Public Health
11 Genomics and the National Cancer Institute, Division of
12 Cancer Control and Population Sciences, and includes
13 partners across the health sector.

14 The aim of GAPNET is to accelerate and
15 streamline effective and responsible use of validated and
16 useful genomic knowledge and applications in clinic and
17 public health practices.

18 Over the next two years, GAPNET will be working
19 to develop models for synthesizing and disseminating
20 evidence-based information on genomic applications,
21 enhance development of evidence-based recommendations,
22 accelerate translation research, and implement genomics

1 translation programs at clinic and community levels.

2 The inaugural meeting is October 29 and 30th
3 and Marc Williams will be participating in that.

4 Lastly, I also want to introduce a new member
5 of the SACGHS staff, Dr. Symma Finn behind me. Symma was
6 awarded a fellowship from the American Association for
7 the Advancement of Science and will be serving her
8 fellowship year at the NIH Office in Biotechnology
9 Activities as part of the SACGHS team.

10 She has a Ph.D. in Medical Anthropology from
11 the University of Florida at Gainesville and her doctoral
12 studies were focused on patient empowerment and health
13 literacy in genetic disease and patient-physician
14 communications.

15 She also has a Master's in Environmental
16 Anthropology that focused on the social impacts of
17 ecosystem management. She informs me that she's been
18 following our work for a long time and will be a great
19 addition to the staff. She'll be working on genomic
20 data-sharing, genetics education, and public health
21 genomics. So welcome, Symma.

22 And now for the highlight of the morning, we

1 will hear from Sarah about our ethics rules.

2 MS. CARR: Thank you, Steve, and good morning,
3 everyone.

4 I'm going to just review a couple of rules that
5 you have to follow as special government employees.

6 First, Conflicts of Interest. Before every
7 meeting, you provide us with information about your
8 personal, professional, and financial interests which is
9 information that we use to determine whether you have any
10 real, potential, or apparent conflicts of interest that
11 could compromise your ability to be objective in giving
12 advice during committee meetings.

13 While we waive conflicts of interest for
14 general matters because we believe your ability to be
15 objective will not be affected by your interest in
16 general matters, we also rely to a great degree on you to
17 be attentive during our meetings to the possibility that
18 an issue will arise that could affect or appear to affect
19 your interests in a specific way.

20 We've provided each of you with a list of your
21 financial interests and covered relationships that would
22 pose a conflict for you if they became a focal point of

1 committee deliberations. If this happens, we ask you to
2 recuse yourself from the discussion of the Committee and
3 leave the room.

4 I also want to remind you about lobbying.
5 Government employees, special government employees are
6 prohibited from lobbying, and thus, we can't lobby, not
7 as individuals or as a committee. If you lobby in your
8 professional capacity or as a private citizen, it's
9 important for you to keep that activity separate from our
10 work. Just keep in mind that we are advisory to the
11 Secretary of Health and Human Services, not the Congress.

12 As always, I thank you for being so attentive
13 to these rules. We appreciate your conscientiousness.

14 DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you, Sarah. Because we are
15 already in a large room, it's important that we identify
16 ourselves. Our note-taker doesn't know all of us by
17 name. Try and identify yourself if whoever is
18 introducing you fails to do so, so we can get it properly
19 recorded.

20 So let's begin. We will have an update on
21 GINA, the Genetics Information Nondiscrimination Act.
22 Genetics discrimination has been a longstanding priority

1 issue for this committee, and we celebrated the enactment
2 of GINA in May of 2008. Now we want to learn about the
3 progress in implementing this important law.

4 First, we'll hear several presentations on the
5 implementation of the provisions of Title I, which
6 applies to group health plans, health insurance issuers
7 in the group and individual markets, and issuers of
8 Medicare Supplemental or MediGap policies.

9 Title I generally prevents health insurance
10 plans and issuers from collecting genetic information,
11 adjusting premium or contribution amounts for a group or
12 an individual based on genetic information, or using
13 genetic information as a condition of eligibility for
14 insurance coverage.

15 Amy Turner, who is a Senior Attorney and
16 Special Projects Manager from the Department of Labor,
17 and Ross Weinheimer, Senior Counsel with the Internal
18 Revenue Service, will report on the Employment-based
19 Group Market Provisions.

20 They will be followed by Jim Mayhew, Director
21 of the Division of Private Health Insurance at the
22 Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, who will

1 address Individual Insurance Market Provisions.

2 Robinsue Frohboese, the Principal Deputy
3 Director in the Office of Civil Rights, and Christina
4 Heide, Senior Health Information Privacy Policy
5 Specialist in that office, will report on the proposed
6 regulations implementing the Privacy Provisions in the
7 law.

8 Then we will hear from Kerry Leibig, Senior
9 Attorney Advisor in the EEOC Office of Legal Counsel, who
10 will review the proposed regulations implementing Title
11 II Provisions which prohibit discrimination in employment
12 based on genetic information and limits the acquisition
13 and disclosure of such information by employers and other
14 entities covered by Title II.

15 Although Kerry presented on the proposed rules
16 at our March meeting, we thought it would be good to hear
17 from her about the EEOC proposed regulations again in the
18 context of the other regulations.

19 So we will begin with Amy.

20 **Update on the Implementation of the**
21 **Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act**
22 **Amy Turner, J.D. and Russ Weinheimer, J.D.**

1 MS. TURNER: Thank you very much. It's nice to
2 be here.

3 For years, I've had the pleasure of
4 participating as the Labor Department's alternate ex-
5 officio member to some of these meetings. I feel like
6 I've listened, for years, to people asking people who
7 came from Congress, why can't we get this GINA
8 legislation passed, why can't we get this GINA
9 legislation passed.

10 I had the luxury of not being in the hot seat
11 and thought, not my turn yet; I'll just listen and hear
12 what these congressional staffers have to say. Then GINA
13 was passed in May 2008, and I heard that some of you were
14 asking, where are those regs, where are those regs. I
15 skipped those meetings, not because I was avoiding
16 answering your questions but because we were actively
17 working on writing those regs.

18 So I am happy to announce that, yesterday,
19 those regs were published. I don't know if they are in
20 your materials, but I'll give you a site in case.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: They should be in your folders.

22 MS. TURNER: Excellent, fabulous. So you'll

1 have them. So you can enjoy them tonight with a glass of
2 chablis in your wonderful suite upstairs at the Park
3 Hyatt. They are fine reading, those regulations.

4 I thought I would start, just in case you're
5 wondering, geez, why are there so many government
6 bureaucrats sitting up there, I might just take a few
7 minutes to explain why there are so many government
8 bureaucrats sitting up here.

9 GINA is a far-reaching law; it does a lot.
10 Sections 101 through 104 deal with nondiscrimination in
11 health coverage. Russ from the IRS, myself from Labor,
12 and Jim Mayhew from CMS, all worked together, and also
13 collaboratively with the states, to administer the health
14 coverage nondiscrimination provisions.

15 GINA Section 105 deals with privacy and that is
16 HHS's Office of Civil Rights, that is why Robinsue and
17 Christina are here. Then Title II deals with the
18 employment discrimination provisions which is the EEOC.

19 So if you're wondering why there are so many of
20 us up here, it's because GINA does a lot, and we're all
21 here to administer it and enforce it.

22 So what I'm going to focus on, with Russ and

1 Jim, are the health coverage nondiscrimination
2 provisions. I'm going to subdivide those, as well,
3 because my brain works in outline format. There are
4 group market provisions, individual market provisions,
5 and Medicare supplementary policy provisions.

6 The group market provisions are administered
7 jointly by Labor, IRS, and CMS. If you're wondering,
8 again, why so many government bureaucrats, I think not
9 only does that inform the interpretive process but it's
10 to make sure that GINA is enforceable.

11 Those group market provisions, what that means
12 is that is for individuals who get their health coverage
13 through their employer. That is the group market.
14 You're put into a group. So if I work for Russ's widget
15 company, we're all in an employment-based group and we
16 have group market coverage.

17 There are lots of different employers out
18 there. There are private employers, there are state and
19 local government employers. The employer is responsible
20 for making sure that his health coverage complies, but
21 the employer may choose to do what is called a self-
22 insuring the plan, particularly if he is big.

1 I don't want to pick on a particular employer,
2 but let's say it's IBM or something like that. They may
3 choose to self-insure, but your smaller employers may
4 tend to go to an insurance company, Aetna, Cigna,
5 something like that, and buy an insurance policy. Those
6 insurance companies are also responsible for complying
7 with GINA.

8 So to make sure that the insurers and the
9 employers, whether they are private employers, or state
10 and local government employers, or church employers, to
11 make sure that they are all complying with the law, and
12 that the government can enforce against all those
13 different types of entities, and that, essentially,
14 individuals can also enforce on behalf of themselves,
15 that they have private rights of action, what GINA does
16 is it amends all these different laws.

17 It sounds confusing. You probably don't have
18 to worry about it too much. I can give an hour
19 presentation on the GINA enforcement structure. If
20 people have questions, I would be happy to answer them,
21 but suffice it to say, I think the main message I wanted
22 to send on that is, it may seem complicated at first but

1 that is to ensure that it works and that people get what
2 they're entitled to. So that is the group market.

3 The individual market is a little bit more
4 simple. That is administered solely by HHS and the
5 states. Jim is going to talk about that. The individual
6 market is an individual who just calls up
7 BlueCross/BlueShield and says, I want a policy for me and
8 my family unrelated to employment. The IRS and the Labor
9 Department have nothing to do with those individual
10 policies. We're only involved when people are getting
11 their coverage through their employers. Then there are
12 also Medicare supplemental policies, which Jim will
13 mention.

14 So let's zone in and focus on the group market.

15 Yes, I'll tell you one more quick joke I just thought of
16 30 seconds ago. Russ is here from the IRS. We've worked
17 together for a long time. He is wonderful to work with.

18 If you're afraid of talking to Russ because he is from
19 the IRS, I can tell you that I've worked with him since
20 1996 and I have still yet to be audited.

21 So you don't have to feel like you have to give
22 him a fake name or something. Feel free to share your

1 business card if you have some questions afterwards. I
2 am not guaranteeing you won't be audited, but again, you
3 don't have to feel like you have to use a fake name or
4 something like that.

5 The group market provisions that Russ and I are
6 going to focus on build on some protections that were
7 already enacted as part of HIPAA, namely, if an
8 individual has their health coverage through their
9 employer, that health coverage cannot impose a pre-
10 existing condition exclusion, based solely on the fact
11 that an individual has certain genetic information.

12 Let's say that they have a mutation on their
13 BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene. They are predisposed to getting
14 breast cancer or ovarian cancer but it's not manifested
15 yet, they don't actually have the disease.

16 Already in the group market for years, since
17 HIPAA has been effective since 1997, an individual can't
18 have a pre-existing condition exclusion imposed upon
19 them, based solely on that genetic predisposition, in the
20 absence of a diagnosis of a condition, an actual
21 diagnosis of breast cancer or ovarian cancer, for
22 example.

1 In addition, in the group market already under
2 HIPAA, the individuals within the group -- let's say we
3 all work for Russ's widget company, so we're all one
4 employment-based group -- we can't be charged different
5 premiums and we can't be kept out of the plan, denied
6 access to the plan, denied eligibility or [dis]continued
7 eligibility, or have our benefits changed between us
8 based on any health factor, including genetic
9 information.

10 So let's say we all work for Russ's widget
11 company. I can't be charged a higher premium than Russ
12 or Christina, based on the fact that I'm the one with
13 those bad genes. All similarly situated individuals
14 within that employment-based group all pay the same
15 premium, they get the same benefit package, they have the
16 same rules for eligibility, regardless of any health
17 factor, including their genetic information.

18 Then GINA comes in, and GINA adds some
19 protections. I'm going to turn it over to Russ. There
20 are three main protections in the group market and we are
21 going to tag team and go back and forth a little bit, but
22 I'll just mention that before we did these regulations

1 that were published yesterday, we did do what we call an
2 RFI, and that is because we're government people and we
3 love acronyms and we drop acronyms every time we can.

4 An RFI is a Request for Information. We
5 published one in October of 2008 that was open for 60
6 days, I believe, where we got comments from the public,
7 both consumer groups, the regulated community, which is
8 essentially employers and insurance companies, a wide
9 variety.

10 The Medical Information Bureau commented, a
11 wide range of commenters gave us some information in
12 response to specific questions we asked, and also
13 generally on the statutory provisions, before we issued
14 these regulations yesterday.

15 The regulations were actually made available to
16 the public on October 1st. I know, at least on the Labor
17 Department's website -- and I'm sure HHS has stuff, too
18 -- but on the Labor Department's website, if you go to
19 www.dol.gov/ebsa, as in Department of Labor, as in
20 Employee Benefits Security Administration, we also have,
21 in addition to the regulations, some fact sheets and
22 press releases and Q&As, and a little bit more plain-

1 English summary of what is going on. So that may be
2 helpful information, as well. That was made available
3 October 1st.

4 And with that, I think I hit all the
5 preliminaries. I'm going to turn it over to Russ to
6 start.

7 MR. WEINHEIMER: Thanks, Amy. We're going to
8 talk about the three substantive rules that GINA adds to
9 what Amy already summarized with existing HIPAA, and has
10 been the requirement for the past 12 or 13 years, that
11 you can't discriminate in certain respects on the basis
12 of genetic information. That was principally based on an
13 individual.

14 The three rules that are added are, you now can
15 no longer discriminate on the basis of the group rate.
16 An insurance company can't charge a group a higher rate
17 based on genetic information in the group. Insurance
18 companies and plans cannot request or require an
19 individual to undergo a genetic test, and insurance
20 companies and plans cannot request, require, or purchase
21 genetic information for underwriting purposes, or prior
22 to or in connection with enrollment.

1 Now we're going to go into a little bit more
2 detail about each of those rules, but I wanted to mention
3 three other things that GINA does specifically that
4 differs from the HIPAA framework that Jim, Amy, and I
5 have been operating under for the past 12 or 13 years.

6 There are these three agencies we have been
7 dealing with, the Health Insurance Portability and
8 Accountability Act, pre-existing condition rules, special
9 enrollment rules, nondiscrimination requirements, the
10 mental health parity rules, both the '96 ones and the
11 ones that were enacted last year, the one on Women's
12 Health and Cancer Rights Act, and the Newborns' and
13 Mothers' Health Protection Act.

14 So we have shared on all these provisions.
15 There are certain provisions that apply across all of
16 those laws that we share, and there are three specific
17 rules that are special for GINA that go beyond that
18 general framework. I just thought this audience would be
19 interested in those.

20 One is there is a general exception to all of
21 these HIPAA requirements. I'm going to call them HIPAA,
22 but it is HIPAA and related legislation, that if on the

1 first day of a plan year, a plan has fewer than two
2 participants who are current employees, they don't have
3 to comply with any of those requirements.

4 Now, how many plans have fewer than two
5 participants who are current employees? Well, for active
6 employees, there probably aren't going to be many plans.

7 This is essentially a retiree plan exception, and that
8 exception does not apply for GINA. For GINA, not only
9 does it apply to plans of active employees, it also
10 applies to plans covering only retired employees. So
11 that is one difference.

12 The other two differences, I can mention, but
13 I'm going to invite Amy and Jim to chime in because they
14 are specific to their departments. The one for Amy's
15 department is the Department of Labor.

16 Generally, the IRS has enforcement authority to
17 impose an excise tax, and the excise tax is \$100 per day
18 per beneficiary for each day that the plan isn't
19 complying with whatever one of those HIPAA laws is with
20 respect to that beneficiary for each day. The Department
21 of Labor has enforcement authority but it isn't any
22 monetary one, like a \$100 per day in general.

1 Do you want to go into what it is, or should I
2 mention it?

3 MS. TURNER: I'll just mention generally, like
4 Russ said, under the HIPAA enforcement framework, the
5 Secretary of Labor can sue if there is a violation of
6 HIPAA, GINA, mental health parity, any of those laws, to
7 bring a plan into compliance.

8 Also, under ERISA, which is the law that we
9 administer, individuals have a private right of action,
10 so they can sue, themselves, to get what they're entitled
11 to, or the Secretary of Labor can.

12 We traditionally have not had civil monetary
13 penalty authority against plans or issuers. GINA changes
14 that. In addition to the excise tax authority that IRS
15 has, the Secretary of Labor also is authorized to impose
16 an excise tax against a plan, which is, again, an
17 employment-based plan, kind of like, picking on GM, if GM
18 is providing health coverage to its employees, there is a
19 separate legal entity that is created called the GM Plan.

20 GM realizes -- its small employers don't
21 necessarily realize it -- but there is a separate legal
22 entity created called "The Plan". That plan is

1 responsible for complying with ERISA as amended,
2 including these GINA provisions. Now the Secretary of
3 Labor can impose a civil monetary penalty against the
4 plan administrator if GINA isn't being complied with.

5 Also, the Secretary of Labor can impose a civil
6 monetary penalty against insurance companies. We call
7 them issuers. It's insurance companies and HMOs that
8 sell policies to employers if they fail to comply.

9 So again, if you have the small widget company,
10 and Russ says, I've got 20 employees; I just bought a
11 policy from BlueCross; what did I know about GINA, we can
12 go to BlueCross and say, but you guys knew better, and
13 impose a civil monetary penalty against the insurance
14 company or HMO for failure to comply with the GINA
15 provisions in the group market.

16 MR. WEINHEIMER: It looks like we have a
17 question.

18 DR. ASPINALL: Have there been any lawsuits
19 filed, or any penalties levied since GINA has been
20 enacted?

21 MR. WEINHEIMER: Well, we should tell you the
22 effective date of GINA is plan years, beginning on or

1 after May 21st, 2009. In general, that means for
2 calendar-year plans, they're going to have to start
3 complying January 1st, 2010.

4 So there may be some plans that, if they have a
5 July 1st to June 30th date, are currently subject to
6 GINA. It's just too early. I don't think that your
7 agency has taken any enforcement action yet.

8 MS. TURNER: Most plans are calendar-year
9 plans, so it will start becoming effective 1/1/10.

10 MR. WEINHEIMER: Okay, I mentioned two of the
11 three special provisions for GINA that vary from the
12 general HIPAA structure, the exception for very small
13 plans of fewer than two employees, which basically
14 affects retiree plans and special enforcement authority
15 for the Department of Labor.

16 Then under the authority for Centers for
17 Medicare and Medicaid Services, the HIPAA laws generally
18 apply to state and local governments, but there is also a
19 provision -- this may be because of unfunded mandates or
20 some other reason, I'm not sure what the basis for it was
21 -- but state and local governmental plans generally can
22 opt out of any of the HIPAA requirements if they wish to.

1 I don't know if you want to go into detail
2 about that, Jim, or if you want me to just go ahead and
3 talk about it.

4 MR. MAYHEW: Good morning. What Russ is
5 talking about, there is a group of plans called "non-
6 federal governmental plans," and these are essentially
7 plans for state and local governments, local counties,
8 municipalities, sheriffs offices. There are thousands of
9 these plans that are just throughout the United States.

10 When HIPAA was enacted in '96, Congress
11 dictated that these plans could affirmatively opt out of
12 the major HIPAA provisions, and they do that by filing a
13 notice with CMS on an annual basis, and then they have to
14 notify their enrollees annually that they continue to opt
15 out.

16 These major HIPAA provisions that they can opt
17 out of are the nondiscrimination, the special enrollment
18 provisions, the pre-existing condition exclusions. If
19 they opt out, they don't have to follow these rules.

20 In order to opt out, they have to be self-
21 funded. If they buy insurance for their health coverage,
22 they can't opt out because the insurance carrier has to

1 follow HIPAA, but fortunately GINA created an exception
2 to this. So under GINA, all non-federal governmental
3 plans have to comply with GINA. They do not have the
4 opt-out option.

5 That is an exception created by GINA to the
6 opt-out provision. So GINA, all non-federal governmental
7 plans, whether they are insured or self-funded, have to
8 comply with the GINA provisions.

9 MR. WEINHEIMER: Thanks, Jim. So now we're
10 going to dive into a bit more detail [about] the three
11 substantive rules that we have already mentioned. The
12 first one is that the plans and insurance companies -- we
13 say plans, too, and maybe this is being overly technical
14 but you can have a situation where a plan actually covers
15 the employees for more than one employer and they could
16 charge a different rate to different employers.

17 So it technically applies to both plans and
18 insurance companies, but there is a requirement that
19 plans and insurance companies and HMOs can't charge a
20 higher rate to a group, based on genetic information of
21 anyone in the group. As we said, HIPAA rules already
22 prevent that on an individual basis; now it's prevented

1 on a group basis.

2 The statute provides an exception or a
3 clarification, that if somebody has been diagnosed, if a
4 disease or a disorder is manifested with respect to an
5 individual, then they can rate them up based on the
6 manifestation of the disease, but they can't based on
7 just having the genetic variation that increases their
8 susceptibility or their likelihood of developing the
9 disease.

10 In the regulations that we issued, we wanted to
11 make clear -- they just came out yesterday -- that even
12 though the plan can rate up, based on the manifestation
13 of a disease, or an issuer can for the group -- they
14 can't do it, still, on an individual basis -- but they
15 can rate up a group on the manifestation of the disease.

16 They can't rate up additionally based on the greater
17 likelihood of family members of that individual
18 developing the disease.

19 So let's say we have a family-owned business,
20 and you have adult children that are involved in the
21 business, and one of the parents has Huntington's
22 disease. Either there is a greater likelihood that the

1 children will have it, or maybe we even have knowledge
2 that some of the children have markers for developing
3 Huntington's disease.

4 So the insurance company can rate up for the
5 one parent that has Huntington's disease that has been
6 diagnosed with it, but they can't rate up additionally
7 for the children that are almost assured to develop
8 Huntington's at some point during their life. They can't
9 rate that up, even though it's a virtual surety. They
10 can only rate up for the one individual with respect to
11 whom the disease is manifested.

12 That's about all I am going to say about the
13 group rates. I am going to turn it over to Amy to talk
14 about the second rule.

15 MS. TURNER: The second rule is that plans and
16 issuers can't request or require that an individual
17 undergo a genetic test, and there are three exceptions to
18 that. All three exceptions are statutory exceptions.
19 What we did in the regulations is just provide some
20 examples on how that works and some additional
21 clarifications.

22 So the first exception is for a healthcare

1 professional who is providing healthcare services to an
2 individual. That person can request that an individual
3 undergo a genetic test. Here is the example. Kaiser
4 Permanente, an HMO, is subject to the rules. They are an
5 issuer.

6 So if I'm an employee who works for Russ's
7 widget company and Russ buys an HMO contract from Kaiser,
8 I go to my doctor. My doctor might say to me, hey, Amy,
9 I'm looking at your medical history and your mom has a
10 history of breast cancer. You're getting up there in
11 age; I would suggest that you go get a genetic test to
12 see if you are predisposed to getting breast cancer.

13 My doctor just requested that I undergo a
14 genetic test. He's an employee of Kaiser but he is my
15 doctor; he is actually providing healthcare services to
16 me. There is an exception for that to make sure that my
17 Kaiser doctor can request that I do that, in the best
18 interests of my health and all that good stuff.

19 We have some examples, though, that clarify (1)
20 this exception only applies if the healthcare
21 professional is actually providing services to the
22 individual. That wouldn't include a claims reviewer,

1 somebody who is deciding afterwards, doing some sort of
2 concurrent review, a retrospective review, for the plan
3 to try to figure out whether or not they're going to pay
4 the claim for the plan. It has to be somebody who I
5 actually see and receive healthcare services from. So
6 that is one clarification.

7 Another clarification that we made is that the
8 exception is not limited to physicians. It could be
9 someone other than a physician, a physician's assistant,
10 an RN. There could be some other healthcare professional
11 that may suggest that I go for a genetic test, who also
12 may be a Kaiser employee. We clarified that that
13 exception is not limited to physicians. So that's the
14 first exception from the general prohibition against
15 plans or issuers requesting or requiring that an
16 individual undergo a genetic test.

17 The second is that plans and issuers can obtain
18 and use the results of a genetic test to make a
19 determination regarding payment of a claim, but we
20 clarify that that is limited. They can only ask for the
21 minimum amount necessary to pay the claim. Here is an
22 example.

1 I think we have an example in the reg where an
2 individual wants to get a test -- I think it would
3 indicate whether or not they're likely to get celiac
4 disease -- and the person submits a claim to their plan
5 or their insurance company and wants to get it paid.

6 The plan may seek some sort of verification
7 that the test was performed if they're going to be asked
8 to pay for it, but they can't ask for the results of the
9 test. That would go beyond asking for just the minimum
10 amount necessary.

11 So if they want some sort of statement from a
12 lab that says, yes, we did perform this test before
13 they'll pay the claim, that's fine, but they can't say,
14 and by the way, can I have the results of that test.
15 That would go beyond the minimum amount necessary.

16 Also, we clarify that there may be certain
17 circumstances where it would be medically appropriate. I
18 think probably any plan says, we only pay for items and
19 services that are medically appropriate.

20 So if I just walk into my plan and say, I
21 decided I want this battery of tests because I'm feeling,
22 today, a little under the weather, it doesn't mean that

1 the plan is going to pay for it. They only pay for
2 things that are medically appropriate.

3 Sometimes it may be that if a plan is going to
4 pay a claim, they might need to request that an
5 individual undergo a genetic test in order to make sure
6 that it is medically appropriate to pay some other claim.

7 If your head is swirling, like, what are you talking
8 about, here is the example that we have in the reg.

9 We worked closely with NIH. I don't see any of
10 those people here, but I'm sure we worked closely with
11 them. NIH told us that sometimes individuals, after
12 they've had breast cancer, after it's gone into
13 remission, may be put on Tamoxifen, just to try to
14 prevent the reoccurrence. There are some studies that
15 have shown that Tamoxifen may not be helpful in up to 7
16 percent of breast cancer patients if they have a
17 variation of the CYP2D6 gene.

18 So a plan may say, look, we are willing to pay
19 for your Tamoxifen, but first I want you to undergo this
20 genetic test and show me that you don't fall in that 7
21 percent, because if you fall in that 7 percent and this
22 isn't going to help you at all, then I'm not going to pay

1 for the Tamoxifen. It's up to you, if you want to submit
2 claims to me for the Tamoxifen, you need to undergo the
3 genetic test to show me that it is medically appropriate
4 for you to take Tamoxifen. If that is what the tests
5 bear out, then we will pay for it, but if the tests bear
6 out that it is not likely to help you, then we are not
7 going to pay for it.

8 So the plan can't require it, but they
9 certainly can request it, and they can make contingent
10 payment of the claims based on an individual undergoing
11 that test and showing that, yes, I don't fall into that 7
12 percent, and therefore it would be medically appropriate
13 for me to take Tamoxifen.

14 So that is another example that we have in the
15 reg to illustrate an exception where plans may request
16 that individuals undergo a genetic test if they want a
17 claim paid.

18 The third statutory exception that we provide
19 some additional clarification on in the regulation is the
20 research exception. This is a statutory exception. My
21 understanding of the legislative history is, it was
22 something that was added kind of late. I think it was

1 something Kaiser was doing in northern California, where
2 they were essentially doing some genetic research and
3 they had this pool of people sitting there, all these
4 Kaiser members, and they wanted to just ask them, do you
5 want to participate in this genetic research.

6 Because Kaiser is an issuer, Kaiser can't ask
7 individuals to undergo a genetic test, so an exception
8 was added in the legislation. We provide some additional
9 clarifications on that exception in the regulation that
10 essentially describes when that genetic exception can be
11 claimed.

12 I'm not sure we provided a ton of additional
13 guidance. We repeat the statutory criteria, which is
14 that the research has to comply with 45 CFR; Part 46, and
15 any other applicable state or local laws that are for the
16 protection of human subjects. Those include informed
17 consent requirements. There are also disclosures that
18 need to be made to make sure that people who are being
19 asked to undergo this genetic test understand that it is
20 completely voluntary and that any information gathered
21 won't be used to discriminate against them.

22 The plan or issuer actually can't discriminate

1 against them. They can't take that information and then
2 use it for underwriting purposes. Also, if a plan or
3 issuer wants to claim this exception, they are supposed
4 to file with the government, and we have a form available
5 on the Labor Department's website that is the form that
6 someone would use to file before they could claim the
7 research exception.

8 So those are the three exceptions to the
9 general prohibition against the plan or issuer requesting
10 or requiring that an individual undergo a genetic test.
11 If there are no questions now, I'm going to send it back
12 to Russ.

13 MR. WEINHEIMER: Thanks, Amy. Unlike Amy, I
14 haven't been participating in these meetings for a dozen
15 years. Looking at the agenda, we're supposed to go until
16 9:30, and I know Christina and Jim still want to talk.

17 Do we have five or 10 extra minutes? If not,
18 then I'll just try to rush through what I have.

19 DR. TEUTSCH: Take a couple-three more, and
20 then we'll move on. We have some time for discussion at
21 the end, so we have some flexibility.

22 MR. WEINHEIMER: Okay. Under the third market

1 requirement is that a plan and an issuer cannot request,
2 require, or purchase genetic information from an
3 individual for underwriting purposes, or prior to or in
4 connection with enrollment.

5 I think the things to be aware of there are,
6 "underwriting purposes" in the insurance market generally
7 is fairly narrow, and it just means we're going to rate
8 someone up or maybe refuse somebody coverage because of
9 their health risks.

10 In GINA, it is a much broader definition of
11 "underwriting purposes," and if you change their
12 benefits, if you try to give them any kind of incentives,
13 if you lower their co-pays, if you raise their co-pays,
14 if you change the benefits that are available to them,
15 say, as part of a disease management program not based on
16 genetic information but based on their responding to a
17 request for genetic information, then that would
18 implicate the underwriting purposes, and it would be a
19 violation of the rules to request or require someone to
20 provide that genetic information in order to get a
21 greater benefit under the plan, not only just to get a
22 higher contribution rate or to be denied coverage

1 overall.

2 The other rule is that you can't request or
3 require genetic information, or purchase it -- we end up
4 using the term "collect" as a summary for request,
5 require, or purchase -- collect information prior to or
6 in connection with enrollment.

7 The timing of that may be important in some
8 instances because people will sometimes have to re-enroll
9 in a plan every year, so if a plan does collect genetic
10 information but is not using it for underwriting
11 purposes, it's not going to affect your benefits, it's
12 not going to affect the amount that you're charged, but
13 they just want to do that; are you a good candidate for
14 our disease management program, for example.

15 Then what they can do in that instance is, they
16 can advertise, we have this disease management program.
17 You can enroll if you want to, but they can't start
18 enrolling, they can't offer the person additional
19 benefits for enrolling. All they can do is say, we have
20 this disease management program.

21 Getting back to the collection requirement, if
22 they are doing that after someone has already enrolled in

1 the plan and then they're saying, okay, we are going to
2 request some genetic information. You don't have to
3 provide it, it's totally voluntary, but if you respond to
4 our request, we may find out that you're eligible for
5 some of these disease management programs or additional
6 benefits that we do have.

7 If they provide it, then we said that you
8 determine whether someone is requesting or requiring
9 genetic information prior to enrollment at the time that
10 they are collecting it. This time they are doing it
11 after somebody has enrolled and it is not going to affect
12 their enrollment status.

13 The fact that they may change plans, they may
14 switch options in one plan and then get back to that
15 option later so it ends up being, in a strict time sense,
16 prior to the time that they later re-enroll in that
17 benefit, doesn't mean that it was genetic information
18 collected prior to or in connection with the enrollment.

19 I can see baffled looks on people's faces, but
20 go ahead, ask a question and maybe I can clarify it.

21 DR. BILLINGS: So I have a health and wellness
22 program at my employer's -- this is hypothetical -- and

1 that health and wellness program is more effective in
2 people with a risk for some disorder, and that risk might
3 be my medical history or might be some aspect of my
4 family history.

5 Can the employer make, or the health insurance
6 company, make a determination of my risk based in part on
7 my family history, and can they offer any incentives for
8 me to participate in that health and wellness program?

9 MR. WEINHEIMER: Okay. They can't offer
10 incentives for someone to participate. Let's say that
11 they have a diabetes disease management program and they
12 can't offer incentives. They can give you greater
13 benefits. They can reduce your co-pays, they can reduce
14 your co-pays for diabetes-related claims. They can give
15 you those kind of incentives to join it.

16 What they cannot do is scour the plan and find
17 out, do we have any people that are at greater risk for
18 diabetes. We can't start asking people, do you have
19 diabetes, does a family member. They can ask if you have
20 diabetes as an individual, have you been diagnosed with a
21 condition, because that is not genetic information.

22 The definition of genetic information includes

1 not only the results of genetic tests but the results of
2 genetic tests of family members and medical conditions of
3 family members.

4 So they can't start asking about family members
5 having the disease. They can't ask about the results of
6 genetic tests for family members.

7 I can see Amy leaning up to the mic. If you
8 have a clarification, feel free to add it.

9 MS. TURNER: Well, here's the thing. I see
10 your look of consternation and I feel like you're
11 troubled.

12 DR. BILLINGS: To put it mildly.

13 MS. TURNER: I think maybe I can try to provide
14 a little bird's eye perspective. You still might be
15 troubled, but I'll try to give you a little perspective
16 of what we dealt with when working on these regs.

17 One is that HIPAA already prohibited
18 individuals from being discriminated against. The
19 discrimination provisions were already in HIPAA. I know
20 that when I came to these SACGHS meetings before -- and
21 am I the only person that calls it SACGHS? -- when I came
22 to the SACGHS meetings before GINA was passed and I

1 listened to the debate about whether or not GINA was
2 needed, one of the things that was debated and talked
3 about was there weren't necessarily a lot of actual cases
4 of discrimination in health insurance in the group market
5 that people were able to find, but there was this fear
6 that people would be discriminated against.

7 They wanted to keep their genetic information
8 private, and people felt like if they knew that it was
9 private and they wouldn't be asked for it, and they could
10 keep it private, they were more likely to go get genetic
11 tests, get them with their doctor under their real names.

12 So it could be coordinated, and good things would
13 happen.

14 So what Congress did in GINA, in the group
15 market, is, it really didn't write a nondiscrimination
16 rule so much. There is a small piece Russ talked about,
17 about how the whole larger group can't be rated up by the
18 insurance company, but it had these prophylactic rules to
19 say plans and issuers can't even ask for this stuff.

20 Doctors can get it, all sorts of other people
21 can get it. There are all sorts of reasons why people
22 need it, but people are afraid of their employers and

1 their insurance companies having it, because they don't
2 trust that their employers and their insurance companies
3 aren't going to use it to discriminate against them.

4 There already was a nondiscrimination rule.
5 GINA adds this prophylactic rule and, to be honest,
6 sometimes it's hard to prove why you were fired or why
7 your insurance rate went up. It can be hard to prove,
8 but putting that aside, and I see you're really unhappy,
9 Congress added these prophylactic rules to say plans and
10 issuers can't request it, they can't require it, they
11 can't collect it, they can't purchase it. All these
12 words were thrown out to say they shouldn't even touch
13 it.

14 There was a wellness exception that was debated
15 in the legislative history and exists in the Title II
16 provisions which are the employment provisions, but in
17 Title I it didn't make it into the final legislation. So
18 we don't have a wellness exception.

19 So what you have is, if it's a healthcare
20 professional, again, going to my Kaiser example earlier,
21 if they actually hire a doctor who is providing services,
22 there can be discussions about genetic information and

1 genetic tests.

2 If the idea is that they're just going to send
3 out a piece of paper and say, tell me your whole family
4 medical history, while that may be used by some plans to
5 do good things, like run it through the computer system
6 and figure out what they might be at risk for and say,
7 hey, you don't even realize that I know your parents are
8 living but they both had heart attacks before age 50 and
9 that puts you at risk, and you might not even know it, go
10 talk to a cardiologist.

11 I understand they may use it to do good things,
12 but they also may use it to do bad things, and that was
13 the fear, and [that is why] that wellness exception
14 didn't end up in the final legislation.

15 So where we're at, and I'll turn it back to
16 Russ to go over some of the details, what we tried to do
17 is, essentially say there are ways that plans can still
18 ask for this information, but we are sort of walking a
19 fine line.

20 They are going to have to be careful and they
21 are probably going to have to make some changes to how
22 they do it, because the statute says what the statute

1 says. To be honest, although I would like to say that we
2 did all these great things and had all these great ideas
3 on how to handle it, the statute is self-implementing on
4 this point, and I don't think that we really used any
5 regulatory discretion at all. If we hadn't published the
6 regulations yesterday, I think that is what this statute
7 says.

8 So I think what we really tried to do was issue
9 some examples that would help plans that were trying to
10 do good things to say, you can still do good things if
11 you make some modifications and set it up this way, like
12 Russ is going to talk about. But there is this
13 prohibition that says, you can't just hand people a piece
14 of paper and say, we want all your family medical history
15 and if you don't fill it out, your premium is going to be
16 50 bucks higher; if you do fill it out, your premium is
17 50 bucks lower.

18 Even if the plan is going to use it for the
19 "good purpose," we have this prophylactic rule, and you
20 have these people saying, so I have to turn over my
21 family medical history or my premium goes up 50 bucks a
22 month? I thought this is what I didn't have to worry

1 about anymore after GINA.

2 MR. WEINHEIMER: Well, I'm going to try to do
3 this quickly, but there is a fine line that we have
4 drawn, and the sequence is the plan can't ask for genetic
5 information, including family medical history, if it's
6 conditioning any benefit or if it's paying you to provide
7 the information, it can't do that.

8 It can ask for genetic information, it can just
9 say, if there's nothing connected to it. It can say, we
10 can ask for genetic information.

11 So they could have a separate medical
12 questionnaire that they send out to people, apart from
13 one that they may provide some incentives for, that says,
14 this is our genetic information questionnaire. You don't
15 have to complete this one if you don't want to, but if
16 you want to, feel free to complete it, and it may help
17 you understand. We may be able to identify certain
18 benefits under the plan that are better for you if you do
19 complete it, but we aren't going to pay you for it. You
20 don't get any greater benefits for completing it. All it
21 is is additional information for us.

22 Then once they have done that, they can ask for

1 that information. Then if they get that information, the
2 plan can advertise what programs it has to them without
3 telling them that they need to enroll or something like
4 that. They can just advertise what programs they have,
5 what benefits they have that may be beneficial for that
6 individual, based on the family medical history and
7 genetic information that they provided to them, and if
8 the individual then seeks to enroll, they can provide
9 enhanced benefits within those programs.

10 They can have enhanced benefits if someone
11 enrolls in a diabetes disease management program, but
12 they can't send out a medical questionnaire saying,
13 listen, we'll give you additional benefits for diabetes
14 if you complete this genetic information questionnaire.
15 They cannot do that. So it's a fine line that we're
16 drawing.

17 We also have some exceptions for some
18 incidental collection under the statute and that is,
19 basically, if a plan is seeking information from someone,
20 let's say they just, on an annual basis, say, we want you
21 to verify that this is your home address still and these
22 are the people that are enrolled in the plan.

1 If that's all they are doing, and somebody
2 provided genetic information and somebody said, oh, well,
3 my dad just died of colorectal cancer and I'm sorry, it
4 took me awhile to get back to it. I know I'm late. I
5 didn't meet your deadline for verifying this, but that
6 was why, well, that would be family medical history that
7 the father had colorectal cancer, but that would be
8 subject to the incidental collection exception.

9 Well, they weren't asking for it, just asking
10 for a verification of who's in the plan and what your
11 address is. It's just unreasonable to expect that they
12 would provide genetic information there.

13 If they are sending out a general medical
14 questionnaire and it only applies to the individual, they
15 just say answer this for yourself but they say, is there
16 any other additional information, at the end of the
17 questionnaire, that you would like us to know, well, it
18 is reasonable that someone might start talking about
19 their family history there.

20 So we've said, if you have general questions
21 that solicit [information], well, a reasonable person
22 might answer by giving genetic information, that's not

1 going to be subject to the incidental collection
2 exception, unless you specifically say, do not provide
3 any information related to family members and do not
4 provide any information relating to the results of
5 genetic tests.

6 I think that's pretty much it. So we'll turn
7 the time over to Jim for the individual market.

8 DR. BILLINGS: Can I just ask one follow-up
9 question on this issue?

10 My concern is that the healthcare system be
11 able to identify people at high risk for things,
12 particularly when you can do something to prevent the
13 later development of disease, and the burdens of that,
14 and the costs of that, and can we spend the money on
15 something better than that.

16 MS. TURNER: I think the healthcare system can,
17 if you're talking about healthcare professionals. When
18 you're talking about the payers, there are some limits.

19 I think, as Russ described, plans can ask for
20 that information if they don't provide an incentive and
21 if they do want to provide an incentive for people
22 turning over their family medical history. They have to

1 do it a certain way, like he described with the disease
2 management program.

3 DR. BILLINGS: So is genetic information or
4 family history information being treated as a special
5 class of that kind of information for this particular
6 kind of thing?

7 MR. WEINHEIMER: Yes.

8 MS. TURNER: Yes.

9 DR. BILLINGS: Thank you.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Sam?

11 DR. NUSSBAUM: Sam Nussbaum from Wellpoint. So
12 this is something that is very significant to health
13 insurers and employers, because then I wonder if you've
14 thought this through. I imagine you have seen the
15 various consequences, to build on Paul's statement.

16 Today, literally millions of people fill out
17 what are termed "health risk assessments," and as you
18 know, this is a well-evolved science in terms of, what
19 are the intended consequences of filling out that health
20 risk assessment. In part, it is to help people be far
21 better informed about risks for them, their potential
22 chronic illnesses and how they can engage in health

1 improvement and avert some of the long-term consequences.

2 Now, it has also been part of the practice of,
3 as you say, creating incentives to get people to fill out
4 health risk assessments, because when people fill them
5 out they can become much more involved in these programs
6 and others, and we all wish we had a perfect healthcare
7 system where all of us got recommended care 100 percent
8 of the time, but we don't; we only get it about half of
9 the time.

10 So the question that I have is, as you've
11 thought through these regulations, that you're dealing
12 with changes for millions of people, and many of the
13 unintended consequences could be far less knowledge,
14 involvement, and preventive activities related to chronic
15 illness.

16 Certainly, we understand what the intent of
17 GINA was, and the intent of this regulation, but have you
18 actually looked through how many employers encourage and
19 in fact provide incentives for filling out these health
20 risk assessments, and what the long-term consequences
21 might be?

22 MS. TURNER: I guess I would say -- and Russ,

1 feel free to jump in -- this was the number one issue,
2 health risk assessment, that we heard about in the
3 comment letters that we got in response to the RFI.

4 Also, this regulation, like every regulation
5 that the government does, has an economic analysis where
6 we discuss the costs and benefits attributable to the
7 statute, and attributable to exercises of regulatory
8 discretion.

9 As far as unintended consequences, I'm not sure
10 I can answer that question, because I go back to what is
11 an unintended consequence of all the members in Congress
12 who voted for this overwhelmingly or not. I don't know.

13 There was an exception for wellness programs in Title I,
14 in versions of the bill as they moved through, and it was
15 taken out.

16 Whether it was an unintended consequence or an
17 intentional decision, I don't know. It all goes back to
18 what Russ was saying, a plan is not allowed to request
19 genetic information for underwriting purposes. There is
20 a statutory definition of "underwriting purposes" that is
21 probably broader than you and the insurance industry
22 would have thought "underwriting purposes" meant.

1 To be honest, we probably would have
2 interpreted it differently if there wasn't a statutory
3 definition. The statutory definition says that any
4 change in eligibility, benefits, or premiums is an
5 underwriting purpose. So as soon as you're giving people
6 incentives, cash, return on premiums, any sort of penalty
7 if they don't comply, it's an underwriting purpose.

8 So if you're affecting eligibility, benefits,
9 or premiums based on whether or not they fill out that
10 health risk assessment and turn over the family medical
11 history, there is no statutory authority for us to have
12 come out any other place, to be honest.

13 I think what we tried to do in the regulations
14 was recognize this point, which we heard loud and clear
15 in the comment letters, and say you can have two separate
16 HRAs. You can have the first one and you get 50 bucks if
17 you fill out that one. Then there is the second one,
18 which is right behind it, and we explain all the same
19 good reasons for filling it out, but whether you fill
20 that out or not, you don't get 50 bucks.

21 A lot of people might very well fill them both
22 out. When people use the word "incentive," I feel like I

1 always smile a little bit inside, because one person's
2 incentive if they participate is another person's penalty
3 if they don't. That is how we viewed it in wellness
4 programs, going back to HIPAA in 1996.

5 If I get 50 bucks and you don't, that is a \$50
6 incentive to me but it is a \$50 penalty from your
7 perspective. What GINA very clearly says is, you can't
8 vary individuals' eligibility, benefits, or premiums
9 based on whether or not they respond to a request for
10 genetic information.

11 We had some ideas for how you might be able to
12 make it part of a disease management program and still
13 offer incentives, but there are some statutory
14 limitations there. I think we tried to do the best we
15 could to preserve what I referred to before as the good
16 things that we recognized that insurers and plans are
17 doing, and just tried to draw this line.

18 When you talk about a health risk assessment
19 from Wellpoint, I know what you're talking about, but
20 there could be fly-by-night insurance companies sitting
21 in some chair over there that also have their health risk
22 assessment, which looks very different from yours, and

1 there is no way under the statute to distinguish the two.

2 So I think, again, we tried to use the idea of,
3 just separate your health risk assessment into two: one
4 has a reward; one doesn't. Rely on your healthcare
5 professionals, use the disease management program, and
6 try to keep doing the good things that you are doing
7 without running afoul of the statute that says what it
8 says. It is sort of this fine line we tried to walk.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: Why don't we move on to Jim?

10 **Individual Insurance Market Provisions**

11 **James Mayhew, J.D.**

12 MR. MAYHEW: I'm going to talk, very briefly,
13 about the individual market.

14 As Amy said, the individual market, the
15 individual health insurance market is exactly what is
16 says. It's when the individual goes directly to an
17 insurance company to purchase health coverage for
18 themselves or for themselves or their family.

19 So GINA was really very groundbreaking in the
20 individual market because, unlike the group market, up to
21 the point when GINA was enacted, there was no protection
22 in the individual market in terms of rating based on

1 health status. So in the individual market, if anybody
2 applies for coverage, the insurance company can have them
3 fill out a health form and get medical information from
4 their provider and it would rate them, rate their
5 premiums based on their health status, and also with the
6 exception of a very limited class of individuals called
7 HIPAA-eligible individuals, there was also no protection
8 against basing eligibility or pre-existing condition
9 exclusions based on health status.

10 So GINA is really the first type of this
11 protection for most people in the individual market.
12 What GINA does is say that insurance companies cannot
13 base eligibility, it cannot impose pre-existing condition
14 exclusions, nor can they rate premium based on the
15 genetic information of an individual. They can still do
16 those things based on manifested conditions of an
17 individual, but they cannot do those things based on
18 genetic information.

19 And so we call these provisions the catch-up
20 provisions for the individual market to sort of get them
21 up to speed or same level of protection as there is in
22 the group market in terms of genetic information.

1 In terms of the prohibition against requiring
2 genetics test and collection, they're virtually the same
3 as in the group market, so I won't go into those because
4 what Amy and Russ said about the rules against collection
5 and requiring genetic tests also apply in the individual
6 market as does in the group market.

7 So what we simply did in the regulations was we
8 basically reiterated the three new protections, the
9 prohibition against imposing pre-existing conditions
10 exclusion, basing eligibility and rating premiums based
11 on genetic information, and then in terms of the
12 prohibitions against the testing and the collection, we
13 basically cut and paste what was in the group market,
14 shifted it over to the individual market and just made
15 some just minor changes to make it more relevant to the
16 individual market.

17 And that's essentially what the individual
18 market regulations do. I just wanted to just talk about
19 one instance about collection. Amy and Russ talked about
20 the health risk assessments in the group market in terms
21 of the wellness programs.

22 Well, that's not very common in the individual

1 market. What you're going to see more in the individual
2 market in terms of collection is an individual basically
3 applying for individual coverage and they fill out a
4 release to the insurance company for them to get their
5 medical records from their providers and because when
6 they request a medical record from a provider, it can be
7 reasonably expected that there's going to be genetic
8 information in that medical record, what the insurance
9 companies have to do is put a disclaimer in that request
10 saying please do not send me any genetic information,
11 including family history, and so when the provider gets
12 that, hopefully what they'll do is they'll purge the
13 medical records of any genetic information, any reference
14 to family history or any information on genetic tests or
15 genetic services.

16 Even if the provider fails to do that and the
17 insurance company receives it, well, as long as they put
18 that disclaimer in there and as long as they don't use
19 that information for underwriting purposes, the insurance
20 companies will be fine because that falls under the
21 incidental collection exception.

22 If they didn't put that disclaimer in there in

1 the request and they get that information, then they
2 would have violated GINA. So we make that really clear
3 in the regulations and we give the insurance companies
4 specific language they can use for that disclaimer so
5 that they can remember to put the disclaimers in those
6 requests for medical records.

7 The only other thing I wanted to point out
8 about the individual market is the enforcement. The
9 states are the ones that really have the primary
10 enforcement authority over insurance companies. States
11 regulate insurance. So each state has a Department of
12 Insurance and so basically in terms of GINA, the states
13 will be the primary enforcement authority, the state
14 Department of Insurance, for the GINA protections in the
15 individual market.

16 CMS has the authority to step in if a state
17 substantially fails to enforce any HIPAA provision,
18 including GINA. So we've been in the past year and a
19 half, ever since GINA's been enacted, we've been working
20 very closely with the state Departments of Insurance,
21 making sure that they have the state laws so that they
22 can enforce the GINA provisions and we're working with

1 them on an individual basis. We work with them through
2 the National Association of Insurance Commissioners and
3 it seems like at this point most states are on track to
4 get those statutes in order, regulations in order,
5 whatever authority they use to be able to enforce these
6 GINA provisions.

7 The only other thing I wanted to talk about
8 briefly was the Medicare Supplemental Insurance, also
9 known as MediGap, and these are supplemental coverage
10 that people and fee-for-service Medicare can purchase to
11 help pay the deductibles and co-pays in Part A and Part B
12 and also some of these MediGap policies cover additional
13 services that Medicare doesn't cover.

14 Now, I think it's Section 104 of GINA really
15 imposes the same protections as far as people with
16 MediGap policies. It prohibits MediGap insurance
17 companies from discriminating based on genetic
18 information in terms of rating the premium, based on
19 eligibility, or imposing pre-existing condition
20 exclusions, and it has the identical prohibitions against
21 collection and requiring genetic tests.

22 Now, the MediGap piece is not addressed in

1 these regulations. Instead, the National Association of
2 Insurance Commissioners has what we call a MediGap Model
3 Regulation and it basically incorporates all the federal
4 standards to the MediGap Plan and the states are required
5 to adopt these model regulations in order to be able to
6 regulate MediGap policies in their state. If they don't
7 do that, then CMS is supposed to step in and regulate the
8 MediGap policies in that particular state.

9 The NAIC amended their MediGap model on
10 September 24th of 2008 to incorporate the GINA
11 provisions. What they essentially did was they cut and
12 pasted the GINA statute and they put it right into the
13 MediGap model and so the states were required by July 1st
14 of this year, 2009, to incorporate those GINA provisions
15 and most states have done so and the remaining states are
16 on track to get those into their regulatory structure
17 soon.

18 So that's basically the high-level overview of
19 the individual market and MediGap, and I'm happy to
20 answer any questions.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: I'm sure there will be some as we
22 get into the discussion period.

1 Robinsue and Christina, want to talk about
2 Privacy and Confidentiality?

3 **Privacy and Confidentiality**

4 **Robinsue Frohboese, J.E. and Christina Heide, J.D.**

5 MS. FROHBOESE: Thank you, Steve. Good
6 morning, everyone. I'm Robinsue Frohboese, the Principal
7 Deputy of the Office for Civil Rights at HHS, and like
8 Amy, I've had the privilege of serving as an ex-officio
9 on this committee since it was created in 2001, and I
10 well remember the early days because, as luck would have
11 it, we were seated alphabetically and I sat next to
12 Francis Collins who, at that point, had not completed the
13 human genome sequence but did shortly thereafter and
14 actually yesterday was at the White House receiving a
15 National Medal of Science for his incredible efforts in
16 this area.

17 I remember Francis speaking very passionately
18 about the need for nondiscrimination legislation for
19 genetics information. And so, I just wanted, at this
20 midpoint in the panel, for us to just step back from the
21 bureaucrats, as Amy has said, and to just recognize the
22 importance of this moment and the fact that back in 2001

1 this committee took on passage of the Genetic Information
2 Nondiscrimination Act as its number one priority. As a
3 result, the Committee held public hearings, did gather
4 testimony about, both, actual discrimination as well as
5 the chilling effect of the fear of use of genetic
6 information. It really was the concerted effort of this
7 committee that, although it took seven years, resulted in
8 the significance of GINA finally being passed.

9 I think, in your packages there are the press
10 releases that HHS issued with the publication of our GINA
11 regulations, and there you see in the quote from
12 Secretary Sebelius, who invokes the memory of Senator Ted
13 Kennedy as well as his words, that GINA is the first
14 major civil rights legislation of this century.

15 So I'm so pleased that the Office for Civil
16 Rights is part of this effort. Our involvement is that
17 Congress wanted to add the extra protection of ensuring
18 that there are HIPAA privacy protections for genetic
19 information, so it directed us to do two things in
20 amending our HIPAA regulation.

21 First, to make it clear that protected health
22 information does include genetic information and, second,

1 to ensure that genetic information is not used or
2 disclosed for underwriting purposes, and so for the past
3 year, we have been involved in very intensive
4 coordination with our partners at Treasury, Labor, CMS,
5 and EEOC to ensure consistency in our approach in the
6 suite of regulations and in our definitions.

7 Our Deputy Director for Health Information
8 Privacy at Civil Rights, Sue McAndrew, regrets that she
9 couldn't be here today, but we're fortunate to have the
10 principal author with us, Christina Heide, as well as I
11 would like to recognize in the audience two other members
12 of our staff, Ileana Peters, who will be sitting in
13 during this meeting, as well as Jennifer Weisman, who
14 came to us first as a AAAS fellow to work on this
15 regulation and we're very fortunate that now she is a
16 permanent employee with us.

17 So with that, let me turn it over to Christina
18 to give you the broad overview of the HIPAA provisions.

19 MS. HEIDE: Thank you, Robinsue, and thank you
20 for the invitation to be here today. We are very pleased
21 that our proposed rule was published just yesterday,
22 along with the other Title I regulations, and our rule

1 deals with a different HIPAA, different piece of HIPAA.

2 We like to think of our HIPAA as the big HIPAA,
3 but I know DOL might think differently.

4 MS. TURNER: What am I? Chopped liver?

5 MS. HEIDE: So when I talk about HIPAA, I talk
6 about Title II of HIPAA which includes privacy provisions
7 and under which the Privacy Rule, the HIPAA Privacy Rule
8 was born, which regulates the uses and disclosures that
9 covered entities, certain healthcare providers and health
10 plans may make with individuals' personal health
11 information, what we call protected health information.

12 And one thing I do want to note, our rule is
13 just a proposal, so we have a 60-day public comment
14 period that closes December 7th, and we encourage public
15 comment on all aspects of the proposal. The instructions
16 for submitting comments are in the proposed rule itself
17 upfront and I do want to underscore one thing that
18 Robinsue mentioned which was we coordinated heavily with
19 the other agencies, particularly the other Title I
20 agencies, to ensure that the definitions and other cross-
21 cutting issues were the same and you'll see that the
22 definitions are substantially, if not completely, similar

1 across the Title I regulations and we also, as well,
2 consulted with NIH on the technical aspects.

3 So we have a small piece of GINA, Section 105
4 in Title I. Congress recognized a distinct privacy
5 interest in the use of genetic information by health
6 plans, distinct from the nondiscrimination aspects of
7 Title I, and Section 105 requires us to amend the HIPAA
8 Privacy Rule to do two things, as Robinsue briefly
9 mentioned.

10 One is to clarify that genetic information is
11 indeed health information and thus protected under the
12 rules and, two, to then prohibit certain health plans
13 from using or disclosing that information for under-
14 writing purposes. Our section also includes that broad
15 definition of underwriting. So the definition of
16 underwriting purposes across the regulations is the same.
17 Our regulation does not deal with what information can be
18 requested. We deal with uses and disclosures once the
19 health plan has the information.

20 So just a couple of points. The proposal goes
21 ahead and does those two things. [There are] two things
22 I would like to point out and draw your attention to.

1 The GINA statute required that we prohibit
2 group health plans, health insurance issuers, including
3 HMOs, and the MediGap issuers, to prohibit those plans
4 from using or disclosing genetic information for
5 underwriting purposes.

6 However, under the Privacy Rule, we cover a
7 number of other types of health plans, as well, including
8 certain public benefit plans, such as Medicare, state
9 Medicaid agencies, the VA Program, the Military Health
10 Program, long-term care insurers, excluding nursing home
11 fixed indemnity policies, and certain accepted benefits,
12 such as limited scope, vision, and dental plans that are
13 separate from group health plans.

14 And so our definition of health plan is broader
15 than the plans listed in GINA and under the Privacy Rule
16 currently, an individual's privacy interests are
17 protected, the individual's information is protected
18 without regard to which type of health plan holds the
19 information, and so pursuant to our general HIPAA
20 authority to regulate the uses and disclosures of health
21 plans, we expand the prohibition on using or disclosing
22 genetic information for underwriting purposes to all

1 health plans covered by the HIPAA Privacy Rule to
2 maintain an individual's uniform protection across all
3 plans that we currently have today in the HIPAA Privacy
4 Rule, and also in recognition that we do not expect that
5 all health plans today use or disclose genetic
6 information for underwriting purposes, and certainly most
7 of the public benefit plans may not do underwriting at
8 all in terms of eligibility and determinations of
9 benefits.

10 So we certainly welcome public comments on
11 that, but I did want to point out that we do have a
12 broader scope in the Privacy Rule.

13 The other one item I wanted to note is that
14 under the Privacy Rule, an individual has the right to
15 receive a Notice of Privacy Practices of covered
16 entities, including health plans, and for those health
17 plans that do underwriting, the proposal would require
18 that the plans amend their Notice of Privacy Practices to
19 explicitly state that even though they may do
20 underwriting, they may not use or disclose an
21 individual's genetic information for those purposes, so
22 that individuals are put on notice or made aware of this

1 important new right that they have and this limitation,
2 this change in privacy practices for the plans.

3 Other than that, we do on our website have the
4 proposed rule. We have a separate page for genetic
5 information now and we do have the proposed rule, links
6 to the other rules, as well as some press releases and
7 related matters. So we encourage you to visit our site.

8 I believe it's listed in the press release that the
9 agency's put out on these rules.

10 Thank you.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Liz, did you have a question?

12 DR. MANSFIELD: Liz Mansfield, FDA. Is all
13 genetic information considered medical information, and
14 if it's not, where do you draw the line?

15 MS. HEIDE: The department has always
16 considered that genetic information is protected health
17 information. We say to the extent it otherwise meets the
18 definition.

19 So what Congress said was please clarify that
20 it is health information. So now we have an explicit
21 reference to genetic information in our definition of
22 health information. Not all health information, however,

1 is protected by the Privacy Rule. It needs to do two
2 things.

3 One, it needs to be maintained by HIPAA-covered
4 entity, a health plan, HIPAA-covered healthcare provider,
5 for example, and, two, it needs to be individually
6 identifiable in order to be protected by the rule. So
7 we've clarified that it's health information.

8 The Preamble also goes on to state that it
9 still must meet the definition of protected health
10 information to fall under our Privacy Rule.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Could I ask you a follow-on
12 question to that because this committee is very
13 interested in direct-to-consumer testing, as well, and
14 has been and we've actually had substantial discussions
15 about whether the information that's gathered there is
16 health information. You've made clear what you consider
17 health information.

18 To what extent are those laboratories, many of
19 which are CLIA laboratories and subject to the rules that
20 you're just describing?

21 MS. HEIDE: They would be a healthcare
22 provider, but we don't cover all healthcare providers.

1 By statute, the HIPAA rules only apply to those
2 healthcare providers that conduct certain transactions,
3 financial and administrative transactions electronically.
4 For example, billing a health plan.

5 So it could be in some cases that these
6 independent labs that do not, for example, bill health
7 plans for the services that they provide to individuals
8 may not be HIPAA-covered entities, but to the extent that
9 they do, they would be covered healthcare providers and
10 subject to the Privacy Rule and they can use and disclose
11 genetic information for treatment purposes. Obviously
12 GINA does nothing in that area to prohibit providers from
13 using the information for treatment purposes.

14 But it would be dependent -- it's a two-part
15 test for healthcare providers. One, you need to be a
16 healthcare provider and meet our definition. Two, you
17 need to be doing one of the transactions electronically.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: Marc.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: Marc Williams. One of the other
20 issues that this committee has been looking at is the
21 issue of the identifiability of DNA samples, and I assume
22 at the present time that the definition of identifiable

1 health information does not quite go to the level of
2 weighing in on the identification of a DNA specimen.

3 MS. HEIDE: That's correct. We have not opined
4 to date on to what extent or how much of the genetic
5 sequence, if that's all that's there, is identifiable.
6 Obviously, if there are analyses or other identifiers
7 attached to it, that would be a different story.

8 I mean, we would certainly, before we would do
9 something like that, need input on what to say from you
10 all and the industry, but to date we have not made a
11 determination.

12 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thank you all. Hopefully
13 you can stay for the rest of the discussion.

14 Kerry Leibig, you want to carry on, talk about
15 Title II?

16

17 **Title II - Prohibiting Employment Discrimination on the**
18 **Basis of Genetic Information**

19 **Kerry Leibig, J.D.**

20 [PowerPoint presentation.]

21 MS. LEIBIG: Okay. Fancy. All right. I went
22 ahead and provided some PowerPoint slides because I have

1 been traveling around talking about Title II, which is
2 the employment discrimination provisions of GINA, to EEOC
3 personnel, to some employers who've asked for sort of a
4 preview of what the Title II regs are going to look like,
5 and I went ahead and just modified it.

6 Usually this takes about an hour and a half and
7 I modified it, so I'm hoping it's going about 20 minutes.

8 So give a wave, Sarah, Steve, if I'm going over.

9 Title II becomes effective on November 21st.
10 We are in the home stretch now of issuing our final
11 regulations, but we haven't done so yet. So today, we're
12 going to be talking about our proposed regulations and I
13 will be pointing out topics on which we got a good deal
14 of comment sort of so that you can be aware of where it's
15 likely that the final regulation is going to be a little
16 bit different.

17 And on this, I think everybody has handouts
18 that parallel the slide show here and you'll see that
19 I've put in regulatory sites for the various topics, but
20 on my way over here, I realized that I didn't put in the
21 whole site because I'm so used to talking in shorthand.
22 But when these regulations are issued, they will appear

1 at 29 CFR 1635 and on your slides, you'll see reference
2 to 1635 point something or other to point you in the
3 right direction and that's 29 CFR 1635.

4 Okay. So we're just going to jump right in.
5 Feel free to ask questions as I go along or you can wait
6 until the end, but basically we have three rules under
7 Title II. It prohibits the use of genetic information to
8 make employment decisions, it restricts the acquisition
9 of genetic information by employers and other entities
10 covered by GINA, and it requires that covered entities
11 keep genetic information confidential, subject to limited
12 exceptions.

13 I can't move because I don't have a microphone
14 attached to me, so I'm feeling a little awkward here, but
15 that's why I'm standing right here.

16 In any case, in a moment I'll give a definition
17 of genetic information for purposes of GINA, but the
18 important thing to see here when we're talking about the
19 three basic rules is that the first rule, which prohibits
20 the use of genetic information, is an absolute rule.

21 Under no circumstances can an employer use
22 genetic information to make an employment decision and

1 this is intended to operate pretty much like Title VII of
2 the Civil Rights Act of 1964's prohibition on using race
3 or sex, for example, to make employment decisions. You
4 can't use genetic information to decide to hire someone,
5 fire someone, promote someone, give someone a raise, make
6 any decisions related to terms, conditions, or benefits
7 of employment, and that includes a prohibition against
8 harassment based on genetic information and an anti-
9 retaliation provision. If someone takes protected action
10 under GINA, they can't be retaliated, for example, for
11 filing a charge of genetic information discrimination.
12 So it's very broad. It's also pretty simple to
13 understand because there are no exceptions.

14 The second two rules, in particular the second
15 rule, which restricts the acquisition of genetic
16 information, has six exceptions and therein lies the
17 complication and that's where we got most of our comments
18 and I'm going to talk more about that in a moment.

19 And then the third rule is just a basic
20 confidentiality rule. Genetic information, like all
21 medical information, must be kept confidential. There's
22 six limited exceptions that are very similar to the

1 exceptions we have under the Americans With Disabilities
2 Act for confidential medical information and we'll talk
3 about that in a moment.

4 Very briefly, obviously usually I'm giving this
5 talk to EEOC investigators or employers and they have no
6 idea what we're talking about when we say genetic
7 information. Obviously that's not a problem here, but I
8 did want to go ahead and make sure we're all on the same
9 page and know what we're talking about under Title II
10 here on genetic information.

11 First, obviously an individual's genetic tests,
12 the proposed rule gives a specific definition of this
13 based on the statute and also some examples of things
14 that are genetic tests and some examples of things that
15 are not genetic tests.

16 This is an area where we got a lot of comments,
17 where people wanted more examples and they wanted the
18 examples to appear in the regulation as well as the
19 Preamble, and you can expect to see some of that in the
20 final reg, but obviously an example of a genetic test
21 would be a test to determine if someone had the gene that
22 predisposed them to breast cancer. That would be a

1 genetic test, but a drug or alcohol test is not a genetic
2 test. A test for the presence of non-human DNA, RNA, or
3 virus, like an HIV test, is not a genetic test. So we're
4 talking about genetic tests, not other kinds of medical
5 tests.

6 Genetic information also includes genetic tests
7 of family members and family members is very broadly
8 defined. It includes not only your children, spouse and
9 husband, adopted children, but also all of your relatives
10 up to the fourth degree, so your great-great-grandparents
11 and your first cousins once removed, which means the
12 children of your first cousins, information about them,
13 genetic tests about those family members is also genetic
14 information.

15 Very importantly, genetic information includes
16 the manifestation of disease or disorder in family
17 members. In other words, your family medical history,
18 and this is important and this is where we're expecting
19 that we're going to get the charges that we get because
20 this is an area where employers do have family medical
21 history. It's probably not that current right now that
22 employers would get your information about your genetic

1 tests or genetic tests of family members, but family
2 medical history is the kind of information that employers
3 often have.

4 And finally, genetic information includes the
5 request for or receipt of genetic services by an
6 individual or a family member. That includes genetic
7 tests, genetic counseling, genetic education, and the
8 genetic information of a fetus carried by an individual
9 or family member or of an embryo legally held by the
10 individual or family member using assisted reproductive
11 technology. So that's what we mean when we say you can't
12 use genetic information.

13 Okay. Did I see a question? Yes?

14 MS. ASPINALL: I just have a quick question.
15 When you talk about, I think I heard it right, non-human
16 samples, like you used the example of AIDS virus, I'm
17 assuming you mean sort of AIDS virus genotyping where
18 you're --

19 MS. LEIBIG: HIV tests.

20 MS. ASPINALL: HIV tests. Where you're getting
21 the information on the virus itself and therefore not
22 considering that human testing. Is that --

1 MS. LEIBIG: That's right. That's correct. An
2 HIV test and all of these examples where we're talking
3 about genetic information, genetic tests, this is not an
4 area in which EEOC has any expertise or experience. So
5 these all came from experts we consulted at NIH.

6 MS. ASPINALL: So did you talk at all about
7 information on the tumor in a cancer patient in the same
8 way as you're talking about information on the virus in
9 an AIDS patient? Did you use any examples in looking at
10 the tumor itself as opposed to genetic basis of the
11 individual?

12 MS. LEIBIG: We certainly don't have anything
13 on that in the proposed rule. The final rule is going to
14 add some examples. What exactly those examples are going
15 to be, I can't say right now. It's still in the process
16 of being discussed, but anything that we did add or any
17 definitions that we clarified from the statute, we did so
18 because of NIH and other experts because EEOC doesn't
19 know anything about that. Does that make sense?

20 MR. WEINHEIMER: Yes. I would just like to add
21 to what Kerry said. The Title I provisions, we share the
22 same definitions, and we relied on NIH to tell us what

1 constitutes that.

2 But I'll take a stab at your question when you
3 talk about cancer. I think the tumor is part of the
4 individual -- has the individual's DNA in the tumor. So
5 I don't think that it would be excluded the way that HIV
6 is which is some other organism, if a virus rises to the
7 level of a full organism, but, anyway, I mean, it is
8 separate DNA for the virus, whereas the tumor, I think,
9 would have the individual's DNA.

10 MS. ASPINALL: That's what I was trying to
11 understand, the subtlety, and then the second question
12 was are all the Title I provisions in terms of definition
13 consistent with Title II?

14 MR. WEINHEIMER: We have minor differences, but
15 they're mostly consistent, I would say.

16 MS. LEIBIG: That's right. We did work
17 together and they're mostly consistent. There are a few
18 differences when you're talking about what a family
19 member means in terms of dependent due to some provisions
20 in ERISA, but essentially we did sit down together and
21 try to make sure they're going to be the same.

22 Okay. So the first rule prohibited use,

1 absolute rule.

2 The second rule has to do with acquiring
3 genetic information. Covered entities shall not request
4 or require or purchase genetic information of an
5 applicant or an employee and here there are six
6 exceptions and there's sort of six situations where
7 employers are permitted to acquire genetic information
8 and, as you'll see, they sort of take into account the
9 legal framework that already existed as well as just how
10 the employment life works.

11 So the first one is intended to protect the
12 supervisor who is walking down the hall one day and
13 overhears a subordinate on the telephone saying, oh, I
14 had a terrible weekend, my son was diagnosed with asthma.

15 That is family medical history about that employee
16 because that's a manifestation of a condition in a family
17 member. The employer has now acquired genetic
18 information.

19 Similarly, if an employer says or a supervisor
20 says, oh, how are you doing today, how was your weekend,
21 and in response, an employee says, oh, it was terrible,
22 my sister was diagnosed with breast cancer, they've just

1 acquired genetic information.

2 Does that violate Title II? No. The statute
3 and the regulation anticipated this problem and we have
4 our first exception which is no liability for inadvertent
5 acquisition. This protects covered entities that
6 unwittingly receive otherwise prohibited genetic
7 information. You'll see some examples there. The
8 unsolicited e-mail message, the how are you, or
9 documentation to support a request for reasonable
10 accommodation or other lawful request for health
11 information that employers do under various laws or
12 policies.

13 Now, this is an area that we got quite a bit of
14 comments on, mostly having to do with situations where
15 employers are lawfully requesting medical information,
16 and we had some civil rights groups who were saying,
17 look, any time an employer's requesting medical
18 information, be it in response to reasonable
19 accommodation requests or fitness for duty, post-offer
20 exam, they should know that they're probably going to get
21 genetic information.

22 It's reasonably likely they're going to get

1 that information and they shouldn't be able to take
2 advantage of the inadvertent exception, and then we had
3 employers who were concerned that their HR departments
4 were going to be responsible for telling doctors who were
5 doing these exams for them how to do the exam and they
6 wanted the rule to say no matter what, employers can't
7 get the information but doctors can collect it.

8 So this is an issue that we're going to be --
9 you should expect some changes in the final regulation.
10 We're going to be fine-tuning it, but the general rule
11 still exists that it is a violation of GINA for an
12 employer to request, require, or purchase genetic
13 information.

14 It's interesting because, I don't know how many
15 of you know this, but under the Americans With
16 Disabilities Act, which EEOC also enforces, employers may
17 conduct post-offer medical exams and inquiries or fitness
18 for duty exams, as long as they meet the ADA
19 requirements, and for example, under the ADA, once you
20 make a job offer to an employee, you can condition it on
21 a medical exam and that medical exam can include any kind
22 of medical inquiries that you'd like, any kind of exam,

1 as long as you treat everyone entering for that same
2 position in the same way.

3 And as you can imagine, most of these post-
4 offer exams, as well as fitness for duty exams, which are
5 what we call the exams that an employer sends a current
6 employee to under certain defined circumstances, but
7 these exams usually involve questions about family
8 medical history. All right.

9 Under GINA, as of November 21st, 2009, an
10 employer that asks for genetic information as part of an
11 inquiry or medical exam will not be considered to have
12 acquired the information inadvertently. That's obvious.

13 If you ask for it, it's not inadvertent when you've
14 receive it.

15 So GINA changes the landscape here. Under the
16 ADA, this kind of questioning was okay in a post-offer
17 fitness for duty exam. It no longer is okay under GINA.

18 Covered entities are prohibited from obtaining genetic
19 information through any type of exam required of
20 employees.

21 Again, we got a lot of comments about this. We
22 are definitely going to have some more examples in the

1 final regulation trying to clarify how this is going to
2 work, but just keep in mind there's no exception for an
3 employer doing a post-offer exam to obtain family medical
4 history or any other kind of genetic information.

5 Okay. What about employer-sponsored health
6 services and here where we get into the issue of wellness
7 programs. As Amy said, although Title I does not have an
8 exception for wellness programs, Title II's exception for
9 employers obtaining genetic information through wellness
10 programs did survive. It is in the statute.

11 An employer may request genetic information as
12 part of health or genetic services, such as a wellness
13 program, as long as specific requirements are met and
14 this is what was said in the proposed rule. The wellness
15 program must be voluntary. That means the employer must
16 not require participation nor penalize employees who
17 refuse to participate. You have to have a written
18 request, knowing authorization. The information goes
19 only to the healthcare provider and the individual with
20 the employer getting the information in the aggregate.

21 In the proposed rule, we specifically asked for
22 comments on the scope of the term "voluntary," and we got

1 a lot of comments and these comments ranged from groups
2 that were of the opinion that in order to be considered
3 voluntary, a voluntary wellness program and therefore a
4 wellness program that was permitted to collect genetic
5 information, there should be no financial inducements.

6 So we got a number of comments that suggested
7 that approach, and we got a number of comments on sort of
8 the other side of the line there that wanted us to adopt
9 the HIPAA 20 percent rule, meaning as long as any
10 inducement was limited to 20 percent of the cost of group
11 or individual health insurance, then it would be
12 considered voluntary.

13 This is an area in the final regulation. We
14 will go through the comments we have received. We'll
15 discuss them, and we will have an answer, but we don't
16 have one yet because the final regulation isn't out there
17 yet.

18 Questions on that? I think probably some of
19 you in the audience are people who submitted comments on
20 this proposal and you will see that we'll address those
21 in the final reg.

22 Okay. Number 3, I'm going to certainly do a

1 little more quickly here because these are pretty obvious
2 exceptions.

3 Under the FMLA and other similar state and
4 local laws, individuals requesting leave often have to
5 provide family medical history because, if they're asking
6 for leave to care for a seriously ill relative, they have
7 to describe the relative and the illness. That's not
8 going to be a violation of GINA. Asking an employee to
9 fill out the general FMLA Certification Form that
10 requires that they give the information about their
11 relative is not a violation. Of course, any information
12 that an employer does get has to be kept confidential,
13 treated as confidential medical record.

14 Exception Number 4. This was intended to cover
15 the supervisor who's reading the newspaper one day and
16 comes upon an obituary of an employee's father and it
17 says they passed away after a long struggle with lung
18 cancer. They've just acquired genetic information.

19 Really, this is sort of a subset of inadvertent
20 acquisition, but Congress created a separate exception,
21 and it says that it's permissible for an employer to
22 acquire genetic information through commercially and

1 publicly available documents such as newspapers,
2 periodicals, magazines and books, also information
3 obtained through electronic media, such as television,
4 movies, or the Internet. The exception does not apply to
5 medical databases, court records, or research databases
6 available to scientists on a restricted basis.

7 This exception is another area where we got a
8 lot of comments having to do with, what about Facebook,
9 what about the websites, blogs, all these sorts of 21st
10 century media sources. Again, you're going to see when
11 the regulation comes out at 1635.8(b)(4), there is going
12 to be a lot more detail of how Title II works in relation
13 to those kinds of sources.

14 We had, again, the range of comments from civil
15 rights groups who were very concerned that an employer
16 who was searching for the information, purposely looking
17 for genetic information but happened to find it in the
18 newspaper, wouldn't be able to take advantage of this
19 provision because, really, it's supposed to be the type
20 of inadvertent acquisition, not the employer who is
21 trying to get this information.

22 Then we also had employers who were very

1 concerned because they use the Internet as a tool when
2 they are doing the application process. They do Google
3 searches. They want to look at people's Facebooks to
4 determine if they are going to be someone they want to
5 hire. So we had a broad range of comments, and we will
6 be addressing them.

7 The fifth exception. It's permissible to
8 acquire genetic information through genetic monitoring.
9 Again, that monitoring has to meet specific requirements
10 and this is dealing with employers that, either because
11 they have to under OSHA or Mine and Safety Health
12 Administration rules, they have to monitor the biological
13 effects of toxins in the workplace or employers who are
14 voluntarily monitoring the effect of some toxin that
15 their employees are exposed to, and GINA has carved out
16 an exception, saying yes, this is okay again, as long as
17 you notify your employees, they give knowing
18 authorization, they voluntarily comply with the genetic
19 monitoring.

20 Of course, if the genetic monitoring is
21 required by law, you don't have to make it voluntary, and
22 again the information is protected. It only goes to the

1 employee and the healthcare provider, the covered entity
2 getting the information in the aggregate.

3 And the last exception is very limited. It
4 only applies to employers that engage in DNA testing for
5 law enforcement purposes as a forensic lab or for
6 purposes of human remains identification. These
7 employers may require genetic information from employees
8 to the extent that genetic information is used for
9 analysis of DNA markers for quality control to detect
10 sample contamination.

11 We didn't really get any comments on this. We
12 did get some sort of informal comments from people who
13 say this kind of DNA marker isn't even genetic
14 information, but we are not experts on that and this is
15 an exception that's in the statute, so obviously we're
16 putting it in the regulation and this is an exception to
17 the general rule against acquisition.

18 So to sum up all of that, I just want everyone
19 to keep in mind that the rule is employers cannot acquire
20 genetic information. They are not permitted to acquire
21 it.

22 There are six circumstances in which they're

1 allowed to get the genetic information, despite the
2 general rule. If they get it outside of those six
3 exceptions, it's a violation of GINA in and of itself,
4 even if they don't use it. Okay? This works very much
5 like some rules under the Americans With Disabilities Act
6 that says you're not allowed to ask certain questions,
7 certain disability-related questions, we call them, even
8 if you don't use the information. You're not allowed to
9 have it in itself. Acquiring it is a violation.

10 The third basic rule, again beginning November
11 21st and thereafter, genetic information that an employer
12 has must be kept confidential and must be placed in a
13 separate medical file. ADA file is okay. It means that
14 this has been a rule about medical information under the
15 ADA and before that under the Rehabilitation Act for
16 years. You can keep your genetic information in the same
17 file that you keep your ADA information, but it must be
18 kept separate from personnel records.

19 There are six disclosure rules. They're going
20 to be listed at 29 CFR 1635.9(b). I don't have time to
21 get into them, but they're things like you can disclose
22 genetic information to government officials who are

1 investigating compliance with GINA. You can disclose
2 genetic information in response to a court order that
3 specifically asks for genetic information, and there are
4 four other rules that I won't get into.

5 There's a specific section of Title II that
6 addresses the relationship between Title I and Title II
7 and we call it The Firewall. In the proposed rule, we
8 basically say this is -- the basic point of this rule is
9 to prevent double liability. It's to ensure that a
10 health plan or insurer provisions or actions are
11 addressed and remedied through ERISA, Public Health
12 Service Act, Internal Revenue Code, while actions taken
13 by employers and Title II-covered entities are remedied
14 through GINA Title II.

15 The example we give is an employer who fires an
16 employee because they get some genetic information and
17 they anticipate that this will increase the person's
18 health claims in the future, so they fire them. That's
19 an employment action. The fact that it involves health
20 benefits does not remove it from Title II liability
21 because health benefits are a term, condition, or
22 privilege of employment, and taking an action based on

1 genetic information that's an adverse action having to do
2 with terms, benefits, or conditions of employment
3 violates Title II.

4 At the same time, health plan or issuer
5 provisions or actions that have to do with decisions
6 about pre-existing condition exclusions or health
7 premiums, those types of decisions made by health plans
8 are subject exclusively to Title I and The Firewall is an
9 attempt to make that clear.

10 Now most of the comments we got about our
11 Firewall discussion were we need more examples. We don't
12 understand how this is going to work. We need more real-
13 life examples, and the final regulation is going to have
14 more examples and hopefully clarify some of the questions
15 that were raised in the comments.

16 And that's it. So feel free to ask questions.

17 Okay. Yes?

18 DR. WILLIAMS: Marc Williams. So just to make
19 sure that I understand the statute and the one exception.

20 So if we imagine a situation where we have information
21 that a specific genetic variant would increase the risk
22 of an adverse health outcome in an individual that's

1 exposed to something in a workplace environment, in other
2 words, a toxin or something of that nature that they
3 would reasonably be expected to come in contact with if
4 they had a specific job, the employer could not use that
5 information on the front end, either in a hiring decision
6 or in a decision about where within the company that
7 individual could work, but they would be able under a
8 monitoring program to be aware -- well, in the sense that
9 whoever they have designated to do the monitoring, i.e.,
10 the healthcare professional, would be able to access that
11 information and do health monitoring for toxin outcomes
12 related to that.

13 Is that a --

14 MS. LEIBIG: Right.

15 DR. WILLIAMS: -- fair interpretation?

16 MS. LEIBIG: Yes, because you can't use genetic
17 information to make an employment decision, even if your
18 intent is to protect someone. You certainly want to --
19 first of all, if it's required by law, OSHA or something,
20 you're going to be doing your monitoring program that's
21 allowed.

22 The only example that ever came up of a totally

1 voluntary genetic monitoring system, there's only one, I
2 actually can't remember what the toxin was, but most of
3 the employers who are doing this are doing this because
4 they're required to do so by OSHA.

5 So the way Title II works is that, yes,
6 obviously you could still do this. You get the person's
7 authorization and you obviously -- if they end up being
8 someone who is likely to be harmed by this, the
9 healthcare provider would explain that to them, but it
10 has to be voluntary and so if you, in response to the
11 monitoring that you did, fired them or made them take a
12 different job, that would make it involuntary and that
13 violates GINA because we say you can't use the genetic
14 information, even in the situations when you're allowed
15 to acquire it.

16 So hopefully the person, if they were educated
17 properly, that, look, you're going to die or you're going
18 to get some terrible disease if you continue in this
19 position, they will voluntarily choose to not operate in
20 that position.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: So following up on that question,
22 so what happens if a person presumably has that

1 information, decides to keep the job, the employer
2 obviously does not know about this particular enhanced
3 risk because of the genotype? Does the employee then --
4 if the employee suffers harm subsequently, can they come
5 back at the employer or is the employer protected?

6 MS. LEIBIG: Well, we don't address that in the
7 proposed rule. There was a comment that raised this
8 issue and the problem is if an employer takes action --
9 I'm speaking as myself here. I don't know what the final
10 -- I can't say what the final regulation is going to say,
11 if it's going to address that, but when you think about
12 how GINA works and what the acquisition exception is, if
13 an employer took action against the employee, they would
14 be retaliating against them --

15 DR. TEUTSCH: Right.

16 MS. LEIBIG: -- or else using genetic
17 information and they're not allowed to do that.

18 GINA doesn't speak to -- I assume you're
19 talking about an employee who then sues the employer for
20 wrongful death or some --

21 DR. TEUTSCH: Right. Presumably they've
22 accepted this because they've been informed of it, right?

1 MS. LEIBIG: You know, GINA doesn't speak to
2 that. So I imagine there could be a situation when an
3 employer is faced with this situation -- although, of
4 course, remember the employer doesn't have specifically
5 identifiable genetic information. So they're not going
6 to know who has it.

7 DR. TEUTSCH: They don't know.

8 MS. LEIBIG: But whatever. That doesn't always
9 work out so well. So let's say there's a situation where
10 the employer gets it.

11 I suppose they would be in a situation where
12 having to decide do they want to violate GINA or do they
13 want to risk a lawsuit, I don't know what the courts
14 would do with that. One would hope that they would look
15 at the provisions of GINA and see that this is a
16 requirement that the employer was following, but I can't
17 say whether that's the case or not, and GINA itself
18 doesn't speak to what would happen.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: So carrying that on one step
20 further, again assuming that an employee then develops a
21 healthcare condition related to an exposure for which
22 they have a predisposition, are there any comments

1 specific to unemployment benefits, disability insurance,
2 or any protections around those types of things from this
3 type of information? Does that make sense?

4 MS. LEIBIG: I don't --

5 DR. WILLIAMS: So the individual has a genetic
6 predisposition to develop a health consequence from an
7 exposure at work. They develop the health consequence
8 and they become disabled as a consequence of that. Can
9 the disability insurance say, well, you shouldn't have
10 been doing that, we're not going to be paying your
11 disability?

12 MS. LEIBIG: I actually don't know. GINA Title
13 II doesn't speak to that and EEOC actually doesn't have
14 any authority over how disability social security works.
15 I don't know of anything in GINA that deals with that.
16 Perhaps there are already existing social security rules
17 on that that someone else can speak to, but I do not
18 know.

19 MS. ASPINALL: On the incidental acquisition of
20 information, understanding in the rules you described, is
21 there an obligation by the employer to document that in
22 the separate medical file or once they -- is there

1 anything they have to do, employers have to do or not do
2 with the incidental acquisition?

3 MS. LEIBIG: Okay. We call it inadvertent
4 acquisition. I think under Title I, it's call
5 incidental.

6 Obviously any genetic information that an
7 employer receives in writing has to be kept in the
8 confidential medical file. Any genetic information they
9 receive has to be kept confidential, but an employer --
10 and again this is not something we say specifically in
11 the proposed rule, but we did receive some comments and
12 my sense is that our position is going to be an employer
13 need not reduce information they receive orally into
14 writing. So they need not do it, but there could be a
15 situation where employers want to do it just for their
16 own record, say okay, we're going to have it written down
17 somewhere that this information was received, here's why
18 it was inadvertent just for the purposes of defense at a
19 later point, but the regulation doesn't require them to
20 do it nor does it make it unlawful to do it. So it's
21 sort of up to individual employers.

22 DR. TEUTSCH: Julio.

1 DR. LICINIO: I have a question about the
2 acquisition of the information. So you said that if it's
3 available, it's okay, but let's say you go to a site
4 that's specific to researchers or to medical
5 professionals, then it's not.

6 But let's say if you just do a general like you
7 do a web search and come across information, that's one,
8 and then also if the information is available on social
9 networking sites, how is that kind of permissible to get
10 that or not?

11 MS. LEIBIG: Well, in the proposed rule, we
12 didn't address that. We asked for comments about what
13 people thought about the social networking sites, other
14 sort of Internet-based information that is out there, and
15 we got a great number of comments.

16 We are going to be addressing and explaining
17 the position of Title II in our final regulation, but
18 because the final regulation isn't issued yet, I can't
19 get into specifics, but I can tell you a lot of people
20 raised a concern about the employer who just wanted to
21 Google applicant A. They Googled them, that's part of
22 their regular employment process, a bunch of websites

1 come up, and they start clicking away. Are there
2 websites they have to avoid? What actions should they
3 take? We will be addressing that in the final
4 regulation.

5 When it comes out, hopefully prior to November
6 21st, I'm happy to come back at the next meeting and talk
7 in detail about the decisions that were made, but I'm not
8 allowed to talk about it until then.

9 DR. LICINIO: Is that also going to cover like
10 if I put some genetic information in my Facebook page --

11 MS. LEIBIG: Yes.

12 DR. LICINIO: -- and is that --

13 MS. LEIBIG: That will be discussed. We
14 discussed -- we're going to be -- we got comments about
15 Facebook, MySpace, LinkedIn, websites, blogs, everything
16 you can imagine, and we will be talking about that and
17 hopefully answering all of those questions.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: We just have a few minutes, and I
19 want to make sure we get back to the other panelists, as
20 well.

21 Are there any other questions you want to
22 direct to any members of the panel? Yes, David.

1 DR. DALE: Yes, I just have a general question.

2 I think that in many ways in this discussion we're
3 dealing with old versions of what might be regarded as
4 genetic information, that is specific tests or test
5 results, whereas when you begin to link clinical
6 information with likelihoods of genetic disease or poly-
7 genetic disorders, it becomes more complicated.

8 I just wondered how -- because in this area of
9 discrimination, it's so likely that, although you don't
10 have a specific test, in fact it's genetic information
11 that's the basis for discrimination, I wonder how broadly
12 you reviewed the issue in the public law where it defines
13 genetic information and genetic tests.

14 MS. LEIBIG: Well, what I can say about EEOC,
15 and I think this is probably the case for all of us, is
16 that none of the Title I or Title II agencies are experts
17 on medicine or genetics or any of that. So we took what
18 the statute said and we brought in experts from NIH and
19 basically did what they said.

20 MR. WEINHEIMER: Well, let me come in. It
21 seems to me you aren't asking about family medical
22 history here. You're talking about an individual's own

1 conditions and because of either the way that they
2 manifest certain symptoms that they have, certain
3 collections of conditions that they have, that you can
4 discern from that a genetic condition. Is that what
5 you're --

6 DR. DALE: Well, I would include family history
7 but also having a genetic phenotype and a clinical
8 phenotype. There are a lot of other things that are
9 involved in determining the genetic aspects of the
10 outcome for illness or health.

11 MR. WEINHEIMER: Certainly, it's going to be
12 protected under both Titles I and II, to the extent that
13 family medical history is relied on because family
14 medical history is defined as genetic information.

15 If it's something else with an individual's own
16 medical condition, I don't know. I'm stumped there. I
17 don't know if anybody else has anything else to add.

18 MS. LEIBIG: Well, if it's a condition, as Russ
19 said, that's manifested, even if there's proof that it's
20 a genetic basis, let's say you have breast cancer and you
21 took a genetic test and it shows that you have the gene
22 that was likely to lead to breast cancer, once you have

1 the manifested condition, once you have breast cancer, at
2 least in terms of Title II, you're no longer protected by
3 GINA.

4 If you have a manifested condition, you're
5 protected from employment discrimination because of the
6 Americans With Disabilities Act, if that condition rises
7 to the level of a disability. So even if the manifested
8 condition you have has a genetic component or genetic
9 basis, once it's manifested, Title II is no longer at
10 play.

11 MR. WEINHEIMER: Well, and similarly, you could
12 say GINA doesn't apply but that's because the HIPAA
13 nondiscrimination requirements already prohibit that kind
14 of discrimination based on a manifested condition. So
15 it's as if there was no need for GINA to take care of the
16 manifested conditions. It's only when they haven't been
17 manifested that GINA had to step in.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: First, let me thank Robinsue,
19 specifically, for reminding us how important this
20 legislation was and how far we've come and now we're
21 talking about a lot of the refinements of all of this and
22 so thank you for that and thanks to all of you for all

1 your work in bringing this law to practical reality with
2 all the implementation. It's obviously extremely
3 important and we do appreciate it.

4 Obviously there are many issues and I'm sure
5 we'll be talking about this in the future again, but we
6 sincerely appreciate it.

7 We're getting to a break. One of the
8 advantages of being here is we have lovely facilities.
9 One of the disadvantages is we don't have coffee at every
10 break. So in your notebooks you'll see that there's
11 breakfast and coffee available at a couple places nearby.

12 The Starbucks is at 24th and M and the Bread and
13 Chocolate at 23rd and M.

14 So I realize that some will want to scamper
15 quickly for their morning dose, but we will meet again in
16 15 minutes.

17 So thank you all and thanks again to our entire
18 panel. We really appreciate it.

19 [Applause.]

20 [Recess.]

21 DR. TEUTSCH: We're going to now begin with the
22 next topic on Gene Patents. All right, so let's now turn

1 to our session on Gene Patents which will occupy us for
2 the remainder of the day and the importance of gene
3 patents and their impact on patent access to genetic
4 tests.

5 Our last discussion of this issue was in
6 December when we approved the Public Consultation Draft
7 Report for release to the public. We received extensive
8 comments and diverse comments, as you'll hear from Jim
9 Evans.

10 Jim has been chairing the Patents Task Force,
11 and is going to discuss the comments we received. You
12 have a summary of them in Tab 4, and he is going to walk
13 us through the content of the final draft before we break
14 for lunch today. So this is our time, mostly, to listen
15 to the results of the deliberations of the Task Force.
16 They were extensive.

17 Needless to say, this has been a topic where
18 there has been strongly held feelings on multiple sides,
19 where stakeholders have really very differing points of
20 view, and then after lunch, when we convene, we have two
21 individuals who have signed up to provide public
22 comments, and if others would like to participate in that

1 process, please sign up at the Registration Desk.

2 After the Public Comment Period, we're going to
3 put the committee to work and begin an in-depth
4 discussion of the recommendations. Hopefully we can get
5 through them today. We're prepared to keep us all here
6 until late in the day, but if we don't, we do have a
7 little bit of time tomorrow, and at the end we need to
8 come to some agreement on the recommendations and approve
9 the report for transmittal to the Secretary.

10 So before I turn this over to Jim, I think
11 everyone needs to know the extraordinary work Jim and his
12 colleagues have done, and particularly Jim, in leading
13 this Task Force. It's been an extraordinary process in
14 terms of the depth of the investigation, the differing
15 points of view that needed to be understood and digested
16 and synthesized.

17 So Jim, we really do appreciate all your work
18 to bringing it to fruition, and now it's your opportunity
19 to bring it to completion.

20 DR. EVANS: Don't thank me yet.

21 **Gene Patents and Licensing Practices**

22 **James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D.**

1 [PowerPoint presentation.]

2 DR. EVANS: So while we're giving thanks,
3 though, I do want to say this has been a five-year
4 project really, as you'll see in a moment, and I want to
5 highlight the contributions of the staff. I think that
6 Sarah Carr, Darren Greninger, and Kathi Hanna have been
7 absolutely indispensable, as they are regularly in these
8 endeavors.

9 I also want to thank the members of the Task
10 Force, who, in spite of having day jobs, were able to
11 hang in there through interminable conference calls.

12 A note at the start here. We were never so
13 delusional when we started this out as to expect
14 unanimity in regard to this topic. This is an inherently
15 contentious issue, and different stakeholders will
16 understandably and naturally have different opinions.
17 It's been a challenge to my conflict-averse personality,
18 but I think that throughout our deliberations, we always
19 tried to keep foremost in our minds the stakeholder that
20 we ultimately all represent, and that is the patient.

21 In spite of some degree of, at times, very
22 strong dissent, the arguing and the vociferous debate was

1 invaluable in shaping our conclusions. None of us got
2 everything that we wanted, but it is fair to say, I
3 think, that as a whole the Task Force is in firm support
4 of the report and its recommendation.

5 So I am going to run through these slides at
6 this point. We will have, it appears, ample time for
7 discussion after public comments and lunch. So bear with
8 me as I go through this rather rapidly, because we only
9 have about 40 minutes now to get you to lunch.

10 This is the current composition of the Task
11 Force with members, ad hoc experts, agency experts. I
12 would give a special nod to Debra Leonard, who was the
13 original chair of the Task Force when this first started,
14 but her tenure came up a couple years ago and I took
15 over.

16 The timeline is such that it was, again, about
17 five years ago, or more than that, when we identified
18 gene patents and licensing as a priority issue, but there
19 was a National Academy of Sciences report that was in the
20 works, and we deferred activity until after that report.

21 We formed a small group in the Fall of '05 to
22 review that report, and in March '06, we endorsed the

1 report's general thrust, but there were significant
2 limitations in terms of relevance to patient access.
3 That was not their major focus. We felt that, from the
4 standpoint of our charge as a committee, that more
5 information regarding patient access was needed.

6 In June '06, we decided to move forward with an
7 in-depth study. We established the Task Force, and in
8 December of '06, Duke's Center for Genome Ethics, Law,
9 and Policy was commissioned to assist in carrying out a
10 variety of components of the study, most importantly the
11 case studies.

12 In March '07, we organized a primer on gene
13 patenting and licensing practices to establish a
14 foundation of knowledge among members and in July '07, we
15 had a Roundtable on International Perspectives and Gene
16 Patents and Licensing Practices.

17 The Task Force continued the information-
18 gathering process and began developing the report. About
19 a year ago, we approved, after public consultation, a
20 draft report for release and the public comment period
21 went the standard time, this was from March 9th to May
22 15th, and we will hear some of the comments throughout

1 this report to you now.

2 The overview of this session, this next 40
3 minutes or so, is that we want to familiarize you with
4 the process for having reviewed the comments and for
5 creating the final draft report. We want to give you an
6 overview of the report, a presentation of the proposed
7 recommendations, and then we will, in the afternoon, have
8 a discussion of findings and conclusions.

9 I would urge you all to read as much of the
10 report as you can, especially the recommendations with
11 the rationale that follows those recommendations towards
12 the end of the report.

13 So we did receive a number of reports, some of
14 them extraordinarily extensive, some with tables of
15 contents and indexes, and there were 77 total reports.
16 They came from a wide variety of different sources.

17 The review process for these public comments
18 was extensive. Some of us read every single comment in
19 detail, but the binder containing all of the comments was
20 sent to each Task Force member for their review. Members
21 of the Task Force were assigned comments to present for
22 group discussion during the teleconferences and all

1 comments were discussed during conference calls, no
2 matter how short or no matter how involved and lengthy.

3 The public comments were a critical supplement
4 to case studies and literature. I think this is always
5 an instructive process. I know that, for example, with
6 the genetic discrimination process, the public comments
7 were instrumental in forming our thinking and I think
8 that, at least for many of us, the same can be said with
9 regard to the public comments.

10 I would add that I think many of us on this
11 Task Force very much started and ended the process in
12 somewhat different places or very different places. It
13 was very much a learning experience and the public
14 comments were instrumental in that learning experience.

15 It was of note that the public comments
16 confirmed that patient access issues that had been
17 identified in the case studies were not isolated
18 problems. These came up over and over again in public
19 comments from a variety of sources, and the access
20 problems appear to be the most problematic for the
21 Medicaid population, as you'll see momentarily.

22 The public comments highlighted the problem of

1 exclusively-licensed sole providers and limitations on
2 their ability to offer, for example, population-wide
3 recommended carrier newborn screening and there were many
4 comments that called for more discussion in the report
5 and more discussion among the committee regarding the
6 impact of patents on whole-genome sequencing, multiplex
7 testing, and other emerging testing innovations.

8 After receiving all of the comments and going
9 through them, I was actually pleasantly surprised to see
10 that there were critical comments from really both ends
11 of the spectrum, those that advocated dramatic and
12 extensive changes and felt that there was extraordinarily
13 problematic activities going on and those who felt that
14 things really were great and that there should be no
15 changes whatsoever.

16 I feel like we have tried to walk a balanced
17 approach here, though I'm sure people, especially on the
18 ends of the spectrum, will not agree with that.

19 Many that submitted public comments discussed
20 their opinions and their perspectives on patents and
21 that's certainly extraordinarily valid to do so. This is
22 a subject that people have strong opinions and

1 perspectives on. We especially appreciated, though,
2 comments that had concrete examples of benefits or harm,
3 not platitudinous, not principle-based, but concrete
4 examples.

5 Some of these concerned the impact, for
6 example, of patents on test development. Some
7 commentators thought that patents are not needed for test
8 development, others thought that patents are needed for
9 test development, and again we sought wherever we could
10 to find evidence that illuminated those issues.

11 Regarding the process for producing this
12 revised report, you'll notice, perhaps, that this report
13 is much tighter. It's much shorter than the original
14 report, and that was intentional. After reviewing and
15 discussing the comments, we revisited our preliminary
16 conclusions, and you'll remember that we took a somewhat
17 unorthodox approach in our draft report, giving a range
18 of possible recommendations to consider for
19 recommendation to the Secretary.

20 What we were hoping and, indeed, I think,
21 transpired was that following the public comment period
22 and the extensive discussions we engaged in, we could

1 then sort through those comments and decide as a task
2 force which ones we felt were most appropriate to include
3 in the final report.

4 We revised the conclusions after considering
5 all the evidence, the case studies, the articles, public
6 comments, previous informational sessions, and public
7 comments during meetings.

8 I would also point out that there was a wealth
9 of expertise on the Task Force itself, people who do
10 these tests, people who order and perform these tests, as
11 well as those who deal with the consequences of them.

12 We discussed which policy options made sense as
13 these final recommendations. The background sections of
14 the draft report were revised to reflect the Task Force
15 discussions, and the considerations, and it was
16 reorganized according to the key questions that we
17 addressed.

18 So here is the summary of the report's main
19 points.

20 First, we had to tackle what types of patents,
21 or, more precisely, patent claims, are associated with
22 genetic tests. It's important that we all be on the same

1 page as we consider these issues. So there were patents
2 claiming isolated nucleic acid molecules, and these in
3 many ways are the oldest type of what is generically
4 referred to as "gene patents".

5 These patents claim an isolated nucleic acid
6 whose sequence may correspond to a gene, to a mutated
7 gene, to intergenic DNA, for example. These patents are
8 sometimes called, loosely or colloquially, "gene
9 patents," and for the sake of simplicity and accuracy,
10 the report refers to these patents as "patent claims on
11 genes."

12 There are other types of claims that really
13 accomplish, in many ways, the same thing but have subtle
14 and important differences. Patent claims to the act of
15 simply associating a genotype with a phenotype is
16 something that has gotten much, much activity and
17 interest in recent years.

18 For example, a patent might claim "a method of
19 determining a predisposition to disease X, comprising
20 testing a body sample of a human for the presence of a
21 mutation in gene A, wherein the presence of a mutation in
22 gene A indicates a predisposition to disease X."

1 So what you can see with this type of claim is
2 that, inherent in it is that association of genotype with
3 phenotype. For the sake of simplicity, the report refers
4 to these patents as "association patent claims." Again,
5 these are very much in the news now because of recent
6 court rulings and pending court rulings.

7 There is another type of claim that is
8 important to define so that we understand the different
9 mechanisms for attempting to patent this type of
10 information, and that is patent claims to processes for
11 detecting specified genetic sequences.

12 So "a method," and I put that in quotes for
13 important reasons, or process of detecting a particular
14 sequence, including a particular mutation, using specific
15 probes, specific primers, et cetera. In essence, this
16 type of patent is attempting to claim a specific
17 sequence, but you can see that it jumps through certain
18 hoops to do so.

19 I think it's extraordinarily important to
20 emphasize that this type of patent should not be confused
21 with patents on innovative methods for general DNA
22 analysis. What we are not talking about here at all

1 today are methods patents. For example, PCR, a new type
2 of sequencing, et cetera.

3 We are talking about laying claim, in some way,
4 to a sequence through different avenues or to an
5 association. Also, there are patent claims to test kits
6 for conducting a specific genetic test. So patents lead
7 to exclusive rights. That is the intent of the patents.

8 That is why we have patents in the first place.

9 Well, how a patent's claim can give exclusive
10 rights to a genetic test is a multi-pronged mechanism.
11 In addition to claiming an isolated gene molecule, these
12 patents may claim, for example, primers for amplifying a
13 gene and/or nucleic acids that are complementary to the
14 gene. So that would be one way.

15 Because the typical methods of testing for a
16 gene in a diagnostic setting involve either patented
17 primers or complementary probes in such a situation,
18 these methods, then, require the patented molecules in
19 order to function. The patent holder's ability to
20 exclude others from using the molecules, then, gives the
21 patent holder exclusive rights to testing.

22 An association patent is a little different.

1 It gives somebody exclusive rights to a test, but with an
2 important, subtle difference. A patent of this sort does
3 not claim the molecule itself, it claims the method --
4 again, I would put air quotes around that -- of testing
5 humans for a particular genetic sequence and associating
6 that genotype with a phenotype. That "which" should not
7 be there, and that "and" is very important.

8 So an association patent says we own the
9 process for testing for this and associating it with a
10 genotype, that thought step. The patent holder has
11 exclusive rights to that process or method which involves
12 the testing and the association of, for example, sequence
13 A with disease X. Because genetic testing for disease X
14 or its predisposition, for example, necessarily involves
15 the patent process, the patent holder has exclusive
16 rights to genetic testing in that setting.

17 There is another way that this can be done.
18 Patent claims over a process for detecting a specific
19 mutation through probe hybridization, primer-driven
20 amplification and sequencing, or some other means. The
21 patent holder then has exclusive rights to any genetic
22 test that detects that specific mutation through that

1 patented method.

2 So it's very important to keep in mind, as we
3 go through this, the purpose of the patent system, and
4 this goes back, of course, to the U.S. Constitution.
5 Article II; Section 8, says that patents exist to promote
6 progress in the science and the useful arts.

7 There is a long history in U.S. legal
8 tradition, founded originally in the Constitution, that
9 the patent system has, very much, a utilitarian purpose
10 in our country. Patents in the U.S. are not awarded as
11 natural rights. They have a very utilitarian function in
12 mind.

13 Patents are designed to stimulate scientific
14 progress through a variety of mechanisms by offering the
15 inventor an exclusive time-limited rights to use, make,
16 or sell the invention. In other words, it grants a
17 limited monopoly, and this is a trade-off.

18 Society has decided that this trade-off is a
19 good thing for us, as a whole, and the trade-off is
20 between benefits of patents and stimulating scientific
21 progress, because as part of the deal when you receive a
22 patent, for example, you divulge that information and now

1 others are free to use it to build the next mouse trap.
2 It has to balance that with the harms from the patent
3 holder's ability to exclude others from an invention.

4 The report, from the outset, was intended, and
5 we were charged with very clearly, the charge of
6 examining both sides of this trade-off. So we were not
7 charged initially to, for example, just go out and find
8 harms from patents. That would have been a presumptive
9 and an unfair type of activity.

10 Not only would it have been presumptive and
11 unfair, but it wouldn't take into account the basic,
12 underlying rationale for patents in this country.
13 Therefore, it was important that we kept in mind
14 throughout the process that we were looking for both
15 benefits and harms where we could find them.

16 So let's look, for a minute, at examination of
17 benefits of patents in the genetic testing arena. The
18 patent system, as I've said, is intended to promote
19 scientific process, and economists recognize three main
20 mechanisms for how such progress can be promoted in the
21 scientific arena.

22 One, patents can promote progress by

1 stimulating research for the purpose of making
2 discoveries or inventions. This is what we think of,
3 oftentimes, as the most overarching benefit to patents,
4 but they also are meant to promote progress by
5 stimulating disclosure of new discoveries and of adding
6 to public knowledge.

7 Finally, patents promote progress by
8 stimulating investment in post-discovery development,
9 especially in the realm of healthcare, as for example as
10 Bayh-Dole recognized, we're not interested in just having
11 discoveries, we're interested in implementing those
12 discoveries.

13 So we want to drill down, and I think it's
14 important to remember that our task force and this
15 committee is charged with looking at a very narrow slice
16 of patents, and that is in the realm of genetic
17 diagnostics. So we want to frame these questions in the
18 realm, in the context of gene testing.

19 So one question that we have to ask is, do
20 patents stimulate genetic research leading to diagnostic
21 tests. Regarding disclosure, we need to ask, do patents
22 stimulate the disclosure of genetic discoveries that then

1 lead to diagnostic tests; and finally, does stimulation
2 of investment needs to be focused on whether patents
3 stimulate investment and develop the discovery of a gene-
4 disease association, for example, into a test.

5 Taking a look, for a moment, at this idea that
6 we want to stimulate research and discovery for
7 invention, the case studies were instructive here, and
8 they revealed that patents stimulate some private
9 investors to fund genetic research.

10 However, there was also abundant evidence that
11 academic scientists conduct research not because of
12 patents but because of other motivations. In fact,
13 academic researchers are oftentimes almost willfully
14 ignorant of the patent situations.

15 Government provides vast amounts of funding for
16 basic life sciences research, and this is an important
17 piece of the equation when we're thinking about the
18 stimulation of research in this field. There were no
19 consistent findings, by case studies or public comments,
20 that patents were necessary to stimulate research leading
21 to the availability of genetic tests.

22 There were weak indicators here that there was

1 never strong evidence that patents were necessary. In
2 fact, many, many genetic tests exist out there in which
3 patents were a complete side issue or non-existent as a
4 consideration.

5 Disclosure is another issue which, of course,
6 we are interested in. Researchers have, we felt,
7 sufficient existing incentives to disclose genetic
8 discoveries. Academic ethos encourages open science and
9 rewards publication of its first discovery, and the
10 individual investigator in the academic environment where
11 most of these discoveries are made is after other things
12 that do not include patents in a typical situation.

13 Patents and genes, in fact, by some criteria,
14 would appear to diminish public knowledge because they
15 result in less follow-on research. In a study by Huang
16 and Murray, we quote in the report that strict
17 interpretation of our results suggest that follow-on
18 genetic researchers forego about one in 10 research
19 projects or, more precisely, research publications,
20 hence, disclosure, through the causal negative impact on
21 the gene patent grant.

22 Regarding the stimulation of investment to

1 develop genetic tests, although patented discoveries are
2 developed into tests, unpatented genetic discoveries are
3 routinely developed into clinical genetic testing
4 services, and I can't really emphasize this point too
5 strongly.

6 The empirical data around this issue was a very
7 persuasive point for many of us on the Task Force. What
8 one sees in example after example, with regard to
9 development of genetic tests, is that the role of IP was
10 primarily used to narrow the offerings out there for
11 genetic testing.

12 Prior to the granting or implementation of
13 patents and exclusive licenses for, again, example after
14 example, many labs offered the tests, in that, there were
15 numerous laboratory options for an individual to have a
16 genetic test.

17 After IP was enforced, after exclusive licenses
18 were negotiated, what one sees is a clearing of the
19 market. This phenomenon is likely due to the fact that
20 clinical need is sufficiently high and developmental
21 costs are sufficiently low, so that genetic tests can be
22 implemented when the knowledge is out there, and that

1 therefore patents and IP considerations do not seem to
2 play an important role in developing tests. In fact,
3 again, what they seem to do in example after example is
4 narrow the market.

5 Thus, the conclusion of most of us in the Task
6 Force was that patents are not needed for the development
7 of testing services. I think there was an instructive
8 public comment from a director of a laboratory who
9 specializes in rare disease, in which he very poignantly
10 said that when they are considering what new tests to
11 develop, as soon as they see that there is IP, especially
12 exclusive IP that is surrounding a particular test, it
13 moves to the bottom of the list, in his quote.

14 Again, we will have plenty of time to talk
15 about this in the discussion period. This was not a
16 unanimous feeling among the Task Force, as I mentioned at
17 the outset, but it was certainly the feeling of the
18 majority of the Task Force.

19 So our overall conclusions concerning patents
20 benefits are that patents do not serve as a powerful
21 incentive to conduct genetic research, to disclose
22 genetic discoveries, or to invest in the development of

1 genetic tests. There exists sufficient incentives and
2 funding for research and development and, as such, the
3 benefits of patents in the area of genetic testing are
4 limited.

5 We then turned to examining the costs, and when
6 I say costs, I would always insert in your mind a slash
7 "harms." We're not talking about just financial issues
8 here, we're talking about harms or costs, in the
9 universal sense, to patents in the genetic testing arena.

10 So the Task Force examined whether patents on
11 genes, on genotype/phenotype associations, on methods of
12 detecting specified sequences, are causing (1)
13 limitations on the availability of genetic tests at
14 reasonable prices, and this could be through, for
15 example, the combination of sole providers and a
16 multipayer system; (2) limitations on the ability of
17 researchers to develop new tests; and (3) whether one was
18 seeing problems in the quality of genetic testing,
19 because it must be remembered, of course, that access to
20 genetic testing doesn't just mean access to any test, it
21 means access to a quality test that is of the highest
22 possible quality that we can reasonably expect.

1 We wanted to interject a quick licensing
2 refresher here, because the issue of licensing is an
3 important one when one discusses these issues.

4 So to evaluate the costs of patents and
5 licensing practices, there is some background information
6 that is required and a license is an agreement through
7 which a patent holder agrees not to exclude a specific
8 licensee from using the invention, and there are
9 different types of licenses that exist.

10 On one hand and on one end of the spectrum, one
11 has exclusive licenses. This creates a sole provider of
12 a genetic test. That is, only that licensee has the
13 right to practice the invention.

14 There are less exclusive forms of licensing.
15 There are, for example, non-exclusive licenses that are
16 extraordinarily broad, co-exclusive licenses that permit
17 multiple licensees to use the patented molecule or method
18 to offer testing.

19 So one of the most surprising features or
20 outcomes of the case studies was the impact on price for
21 genetic tests, because I think most of us assumed at the
22 outset that there would be some patent premium associated

1 with the holding of a patent and exclusivity in the realm
2 of a genetic test, and that did not turn out to be the
3 case.

4 So there was not a pattern of overpricing for
5 tests that were patented and exclusively licensed when
6 compared with tests that were either unpatented or non-
7 exclusively licensed. There were a number of instructive
8 and interesting kind of experiments of nature here that
9 focused, for example, on the BRCA testing. So Myriad
10 Genetics, for example, as we all know, holds the patent
11 on the BRCA test and excludes others from doing it.

12 When you compare the unit price for that test
13 with either tests that they offer that are not
14 exclusively owned by them or with tests that are
15 performed by other entities, one does not see a patent
16 premium.

17 Now, there is evidence or suggestion of a
18 patent premium in the test for Canavan disease versus
19 Tay-Sachs, which is a reasonable comparison that could
20 reflect a patent premium, but overall, we did not see a
21 pervasive increase in costs.

22 There was a public comment that was

1 instructive, suggesting that Athena, who owns the
2 exclusive licenses on a number of spinocerebellar ataxia-
3 responsible genes is needlessly expensive, not because of
4 a patent premium, per se, but because it necessitates
5 bundled testing in some circumstances. So one has to
6 think about the fact that we deal frequently with
7 genetically heterogeneous diseases.

8 It may well be that a clinician would like to
9 test gene A or gene B or gene C. If an exclusive
10 licensee or an exclusive provider of such testing doesn't
11 allow that type of testing and says no, you have to get
12 the whole panel, that obviously can cause an increase in
13 prices, is of a somewhat different mechanism than a
14 traditional patent premium.

15 So clinical access to genetic tests was judged
16 by trying to review articles, case studies, public
17 comments, and these indicated that overall patents and
18 exclusive licenses have certainly limited the ability of
19 clinical laboratories to offer genetic testing. This is
20 a non-controversial statement, in that, one can show over
21 and over again, of course, that laboratories are
22 prohibited from doing testing when IP is invoked against

1 them.

2 Now, licensing practices that limit the number
3 of clinical labs that can offer a test do not necessarily
4 result in patient access problems. However, patient
5 access problems were certainly reported and arose when
6 licensing creates a sole provider as, probably, the major
7 type of context or situation in which problems occurred.

8 So going on to look at this process, these
9 access problems have generally not occurred for patent-
10 protected tests that are broadly licensed. Most problems
11 seem to occur when tests are exclusively licensed and
12 create, then, a sole provider.

13 For example, the case study of the Long QT
14 syndrome. The Long QT syndrome is a lethal disorder in
15 which individuals have a genetic predisposition to lethal
16 dysrhythmias. Over a period of about 18 months, excessive
17 exclusive licensees enforced patent rights, even though
18 they were not yet offering a test, which, in the judgment
19 of the case studies, "probably had a small but tangible
20 negative effect on patient access."

21 So looking at the issue, an issue that was,
22 again, highly instructive in the realm of public

1 comments, and in talking to clinicians as well as
2 patients who have dealt with these issues, is the issue
3 of how the sole provider interacts with health insurance
4 and how that changes or affects patient access.

5 What we saw over and over again and again,
6 again, in the public comments, is that the combination of
7 exclusive licensing to create a sole provider, combined
8 in the context of a multiple payer system, like the U.S.
9 healthcare system, often results in patient access
10 problems. The meat of this type of scenario is the
11 following.

12 Sole providers oftentimes fail to secure
13 coverage from some major payers. This includes, for
14 example, out-of-state Medicaid programs. As a result,
15 some patients can't obtain the covered testing and, of
16 course, it's indigent patients, covered by Medicaid in
17 particular, that do not obtain testing. The way this
18 works, for example, is that a laboratory with exclusive
19 rights to do this test, for example, doesn't have a
20 contract with MediCal, the Medicaid program in
21 California.

22 MediCal has numerous contracts with

1 laboratories who have said, we would like to do this
2 test; you have a contract with us, we would like to do
3 this test. But they can't do it because of the
4 exclusivity engendered by the patenting and licensing
5 situation.

6 In the hearing loss example for Athena, which
7 has exclusive license to a number of the genes that are
8 involved in hearing loss, they have not been able to
9 secure coverage from MediCal for Connexum-26 testing.
10 Now Connexum-26 mutations account for the bulk of non-
11 syndromic recessive hearing loss cases, and this quote is
12 from the case studies:

13 "Access for these consumers, therefore, depends on the
14 availability of additional providers who may
15 have contracts with Medicaid, or entails direct
16 out-of-pocket payment by consumers.
17 Uncertainty surrounding whether these alternate
18 providers will face enforcement or will stop
19 testing creates an unstable situation."

20 So there are many different ways of dealing
21 with this. If you're a lab and you have a contract with
22 a state Medicaid agency, and yet you are prohibited from

1 doing the test, one choice is, we won't do the test.
2 That, of course, is what your legal counsel would tell
3 you, typically, not to do. Other laboratories say, well,
4 we're just going to do the test and hope that nobody
5 enforces. So, as you can see, it's a rather unstable
6 situation.

7 There are similar problems for SCA testing,
8 which we have mentioned before. Sole providers offering
9 testing for Alzheimer's disease and Long QTS have had
10 problems, for example, securing coverage from particular
11 payers.

12 Myriad Genetics had this problem at the outset
13 but now has secured wide coverage from Medicare with very
14 reasonable types of regulations about when it applies as
15 well as private insurers, but it should be noted that
16 Medicaid patients still cannot obtain such testing in at
17 least most, if not all, states.

18 The information from public comments again
19 highlighted this issue. It arose in Georgia. We got
20 several comments regarding this same issue going on in
21 Georgia as going on in California with "the end result is
22 that access to genetic tests can be largely influenced by

1 patient's socioeconomic status and geographic location."

2 In one state where there is a contract, you might be
3 covered. If you're in another state, you won't.

4 A healthcare provider complained that some sole
5 providers have not secured coverage and by this same
6 mechanism there were problems in Montana. A parent
7 complained of insurers not covering genetic testing for
8 hearing loss. An advocacy group complained that Athena,
9 the sole provider for dystrophin genetic testing, has not
10 secured coverage from some payers, again resulting in
11 access problems.

12 So observations from the public comments
13 include that when there's a sole provider, patients can't
14 obtain second opinion testing. So this is another issue
15 that came out in the public comments and have actually
16 been in the news of late because of the ACLU-orchestrated
17 lawsuit against Myriad Genetics.

18 This issue of second opinion testing is seen as
19 a particularly-troubling one when one is in the context
20 of a sole provider.

21 Recommended carrier and newborn screening is
22 not possible at times when only one lab offers the test

1 and it's thought that multiple labs are oftentimes needed
2 to handle the kind of volume of testing as well as the
3 temporal factors that are important in newborn screening
4 in which this has to get done quickly in order for
5 interventions to be enacted.

6 So our conclusions regarding patient access are
7 for the most part patents covering genetic tests and
8 related licensing practices do not appear to be causing
9 wide or lasting barriers to patient access and this
10 sentence is lifted out in a number of comments, that
11 sometimes what is not lifted out is the subsequent
12 sentences which are, "However, the case studies and
13 public comments document several situations in which
14 patient access to genetic tests has been impeded for
15 segments of the population, especially indigent patients,
16 when these tests are offered by an exclusive provider or
17 a limited number of providers, a practice directly
18 enabled by current patent and licensing practices."

19 Now, we struggled for a long time with the
20 issue of quality. Again, as I mentioned, from the
21 outset, our charge was to look at patient access to
22 genetic testing and inherent in that charge was the

1 genetic testing needed to be of high quality.

2 There were recurrent concerns regarding test
3 quality, where a test is offered by a sole provider.
4 Here, we relied to a considerable extent on the expertise
5 of two members of the Task Force, Andrea Ferreira-
6 Gonzalez and Debra Leonard, who do these tests and who
7 are engaged, on a day-to-day basis, in quality control.

8 It was pointed out that proficiency testing,
9 which undergirds quality control in this country for
10 laboratory testing in general, requires that multiple
11 labs offer a particular test.

12 In addition, there is concern that with samples
13 becoming increasingly labile and smaller as we use biopsy
14 techniques, for example, that are less invasive and
15 produce smaller amounts of material, more local
16 laboratories are needed to handle testing. Samples sent
17 to a distant sole provider are subject, for example, to
18 degradation.

19 The competition between multiple laboratories
20 offering a particular test, in addition, need innovation
21 in the testing method for that test. So quality, I
22 think, needs to be looked at from a rather expansive

1 standpoint. We are not talking about just
2 reproducibility, about did the right answer occur. Those
3 are absolutely critical and are addressed optimally by
4 multiple labs that can share samples and engage in
5 proficiency testing.

6 In addition, when we think about quality, one
7 needs to think about implementing new innovations in
8 order to improve, for example, the sensitivity and
9 specificity of a test. The most conical example of this
10 that is brought out frequently is the Myriad Genetics
11 example, where deletion testing lagged behind many calls
12 for improved testing.

13 In the example of CF, which is instructive, you
14 have a lack of exclusivity, and this has led to multiple,
15 both private and non-private, labs, who all compete to
16 offer a variety of things based on innovative testing,
17 quality of testing, sensitivity, specificity, et cetera.

18 By having non-exclusivity, what one sees is
19 basically a marketplace in which innovation and quality
20 is enhanced. There is legitimate concern that
21 exclusivity undermines that process.

22 So the existence of a sole provider dictates,

1 in addition, what method of testing is offered and the
2 testing strategy. For example, bundling is common, as we
3 discussed a moment ago, for heterogeneous conditions, but
4 is not necessarily the most efficient or the most cost-
5 effective way for a patient or a provider to proceed.

6 Again, in the setting of exclusivity, there is
7 little pressure on a particular laboratory to offer a
8 variety of modalities by which to do that test. Those
9 methods are at the discretion of a single laboratory, and
10 I mentioned the issue with Myriad and deletion testing.

11 One of the things you might notice, if you were
12 able to get through both the draft report and the final
13 report, is that we have spent more time in the final
14 report discussing the implications of the current
15 landscape in gene patents and licenses for the emerging
16 world of genetic testing.

17 There were many comments from all across the
18 spectrum that said, you guys need to consider this and
19 that, which was a major driver in our deliberations over
20 the last couple of months.

21 There is broad consensus, I think, in the
22 medical arena, in the technological arena, that genetic

1 testing will increasingly involve multiplex technologies.

2 Genetic diseases, common diseases are genetically
3 heterogeneous. That is, there are many genes that go
4 into a predisposition for any given disease, and
5 moreover, we are on the verge of whole-genome sequencing.

6 There is no question in anyone's mind, who is
7 involved in this, that within the next few years, whole-
8 genome sequencing will be readily available for prices
9 that now certain bundles of testing, for example, SCA,
10 will exceed in cost. So it will be cheaper to sequence
11 the entire genome than to sequence at current costs, say,
12 11 genes responsible for a single disease.

13 The advent of multiplex testing is already an
14 issue with regard to gene patents and access. Labs
15 holding exclusive licenses are currently blocking labs
16 that do multiplex testing from reporting full results
17 pertaining to those patented genes, and we heard about
18 this in public comments. The potential for a blocking
19 situation in Long QT testing, we've discussed.

20 So the Task Force studied not only the costs or
21 harms of patents on existing tests but also the potential
22 of existing patents to block the development of new

1 tests, specifically multiplex tests, parallel sequencing
2 of multiple genes, and clinical whole-genome sequencing.

3 I am going to need to go quickly here if people
4 are going to get lunch.

5 There is no precise figure for the number of
6 genes or associations protected by patents. Suffice it
7 to say that the typical number bandied about is that
8 about 20 percent of the human genome is under patent
9 protection, and concerns have been raised that all of
10 these existing patents on genes and disease phenotype
11 associations have created a thicket of rights. A
12 developer would need multiple licenses to develop a
13 multigene test.

14 Patents on genes and associations cannot be
15 invented around, an important point, and controversy
16 exists regarding the legitimacy of patents on genes and
17 associations. Some view patents on these as playing in
18 products of nature, and view patents on association as
19 claiming laws of nature.

20 So would these new methods actually infringe on
21 patents on genes? Well, multiplex testing involves
22 probed molecules that would probably infringe

1 corresponding patents and nucleic acid molecules.
2 Multiple parallel sequencing typically involves aligo
3 nucleotype molecules that again would probably infringe
4 on patented nucleic acid molecules.

5 There is interesting uncertainty over whether
6 whole-genome sequencing would infringe on such patents on
7 genes. Association patent claims, on the other hand, are
8 by definition quite broad. We've gone over the
9 definition of an association patent. Claims, such as
10 these, do not specify a particular method of testing, so
11 any method of testing is protected, if one is making that
12 association and, as such, any new form of testing would
13 infringe claims of this breadth, assuming that the test
14 included a gene referenced by the patent which, of
15 course, whole-genome sequencing would by definition
16 necessarily include all genes.

17 So delving into this a little more, would these
18 new methods infringe patent claims? It really depends on
19 the particular method and process claimed, and I'm going
20 to go to the summary slide here.

21 New methods would probably infringe at least
22 some association patent claims. For example, parallel

1 sequencing and multiple testing appear likely to infringe
2 patent claims on genes and the methods for detecting
3 specified sequences. Whole-genome sequencing may or may
4 not infringe on patent claims to genes, and this is a
5 matter of some debate amongst legal scholars in the area.

6 So test developers nevertheless would need
7 multiple licenses to existing patents to develop most of
8 these new innovations.

9 There are also challenges to obtaining licenses
10 that has to do with the fact that the human genome has
11 been staked out in many arenas. It is often unclear
12 whether licensing rights are available. One way to learn
13 of this is to look at existing licenses. However,
14 license terms are often undisclosed. Even if one can
15 obtain all needed licenses, all of these licenses can
16 lead to royalty stacking. There are also transaction
17 costs simply involved in having to separately negotiate
18 each license.

19 A patent thicket may block or hinder the
20 development of new innovations. There's costs involved
21 in researching patents, separately negotiating each
22 license and cumulative license fees that can then

1 discourage development, and even if these costs can be
2 overcome, patent holders who refuse to license can
3 prevent test developers from using a patented gene
4 molecule or association, diminishing the value then of a
5 multigene test, the blocking problem in which one
6 individual laboratory says we've got this gene, it
7 accounts for 11 percent of cases, and it's not going to
8 be in this panel or that panel, and, moreover, patents on
9 genes and associations, especially simply cannot be
10 invented around.

11 There have been a variety of proposed solutions
12 to patent thickets, including patent pools which are
13 interesting and innovative agreements among multiple
14 patent holders who license all patent rights as a packet,
15 and those advantages include the ability to retain all
16 the rights with one license. That solves the stacking
17 problem. The disadvantages, however, are that patent
18 pools are voluntary.

19 In biotechnology, patent holders have no real
20 inherent incentive to join forces because again each
21 holder of a gene can offer a single gene test as opposed
22 to if one owns one necessary component of a chip, all

1 right, you can't do anything with that, but you actually
2 can do something if you simply own a single gene. A
3 hold-out's refusal to participate can limit the value of
4 the pool and, most instructively, they've not proven
5 useful in the genetic testing arena thus far. So
6 questions remain as to the viability of these solutions.

7 Clearinghouses are another innovative solution
8 that has promise. Patent holders join a collective that
9 then charges a standard licensing fee for each patent and
10 the advantages, again, are that you don't need to
11 negotiate each license. You have license fees that are
12 considered in bulk.

13 The disadvantages again are that clearinghouses
14 are voluntary. There is the possibility of hold-outs and
15 they've not proven useful in the genetic testing arena
16 thus far. So again, there's significant questions as to
17 whether this is a viable solution, and I think it would
18 be awfully sketchy to rely on these as solutions.

19 There are additional challenges to the
20 development of laboratory-developed tests or "home
21 brews," in the colloquial. Research to create LDTs is
22 not entitled to experimental use exemption. The Hatch-

1 Waxman experimental use provision provides exemption from
2 patent infringement liability for using a patented
3 invention for the purpose of developing and submitting
4 information under federal law regulating drugs. Those
5 using patented molecules during research to develop a
6 CLIA lab-developed test couldn't invoke this exemption
7 because CLIA is not a federal law that regulates drugs.

8 Conversely, to gain approval for a test kit,
9 developers must submit information on analytic validity,
10 clinical validity, under the FDCA, so any use of patented
11 molecules, associations, et cetera, in a kit would likely
12 be exempt from infringement.

13 Now, there are a variety of legal developments
14 that are currently in flux. There are various ongoing
15 cases that may well alter the patentability of genes
16 associations and methods of detecting specific sequences.

17 We all probably know about the ACLU case in
18 which a variety of plaintiffs are challenging the
19 patentability of various claims, including the claim to
20 BRCA1 and BRCA2, isolated gene molecules, the claim to
21 association between BRCA2 and breast cancer, and claims
22 to methods of detecting the mutations in these genes.

1 Bilski has just been granted certiorari by the
2 Supreme Court and will be heard and may well, it's almost
3 certainly will, affect the patentability of processes for
4 correlating a genotype with a phenotype, even though
5 Bilski is not in its narrow sense about genes.

6 It was the feeling of the Task Force, however,
7 that it is impossible to predict the outcome of these
8 cases. It's better, then, to address problems that we
9 see as pressing, through recommending policy changes and
10 statutory changes.

11 We reviewed a few other pieces of material,
12 including the Bayh-Dole Act. This established the
13 uniform policy of allowing academic institutions to
14 retain title to federally-funded inventions and the
15 question arose during our Task Force deliberations over
16 whether law gives agencies the authority to require non-
17 exclusive licensing.

18 Clearly, even if it does, this is not the norm,
19 and NIH best practices for the licensing of genomic
20 inventions were reviewed. These have been promulgated to
21 promote, for example, broad licensure.

22 The nine points have been promulgated to

1 promote many of the same things. The OECD Guidelines for
2 Licensing of Genetic Inventions, the NIH Policy of
3 Sharing Data, et cetera, et cetera. There is no shortage
4 of promulgated suggestions and suggested rules that
5 discourage exclusivity and, for example in this case,
6 discourage genotype/phenotype association. However,
7 these recommendations have existed for a long time and
8 uptake is, to put it mildly, not universal.

9 Finally, before we get to the recommendations,
10 I want to just remind people of something that I think
11 the Task Force was cognizant of all along, and that is,
12 there is a moral dimension to this question.

13 There were many comments that pointed out that
14 moral and ethical issues are inherent to the
15 consideration of gene patents and licenses. I think we
16 all understand that at a basic level. You talk to anyone
17 about this subject, people feel strongly about it.
18 There is a moral and ethical dimension.

19 There is strong sentiment in some quarters that
20 exists that access to one's own genetic information
21 should not be limited or proscribed by patents and, of
22 course, that's what a diagnostic test is doing. It's

1 achieving information about one's own genetic
2 information, and this is at the root of the recent court
3 case that's been brought against Myriad.

4 I would also remind us, as we think about
5 making changes to a system, that genetic tests are not
6 equivalent to commodities. We're not talking about
7 consumer electronics or kitchen appliances here. We're
8 talking about human health, and these considerations are
9 important to remember, in that they affect human lives
10 and human health.

11 So to sum up, the patent system is designed to
12 promote progress. That is the purpose of the patent
13 system in the U.S., going back to the Constitution.

14 In the realm of therapeutics, for example
15 drugs, strong arguments can be made that patents enable
16 innovation, drive progress, and serve an important role
17 because, for example, of the high, high upfront costs in
18 investment that are required.

19 In the realm of diagnostics, patent-enabled
20 exclusivity, primarily, demonstrably and empirically
21 results in a narrowing of offering to patients and
22 physicians.

1 If access, again, to kitchen appliances were
2 the issue, I'm not sure that the situation would be
3 anything more than lamentable, and might not rise to the
4 level which we might advocate change for, but what is at
5 stake is patient access to important medical information
6 and we, the Task Force, in general, with some dissent,
7 felt that this warrants changes to the system.

8 Now, let me ask Sarah and Steve, since we're
9 running late, do you want me to go through the
10 recommendations, quickly?

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Yes. Can you briefly go through
12 them?

13 DR. EVANS: Yes. I'll go through them very
14 quickly, and then you can look at them.

15 DR. TEUTSCH: It would be helpful for everybody
16 to have them.

17 DR. EVANS: We're going to go through these in
18 detail afterwards.

19 So the overarching recommendations are really
20 1, 2, and perhaps 3. Number 1 advocates that the
21 Secretary supports and works with the Secretary of
22 Commerce to achieve the following statutory changes, and

1 that would create an exemption from liability for
2 infringement of patent claims on genes for those who
3 make, use, order, offer for sale, sell a test that is
4 developed under the patent for patient care purposes.

5 What this seeks to do is, it seeks to narrowly
6 dissect the diagnostic use of gene patents from other
7 uses, and exempt that use in the medical context. This
8 can be seen in some ways as analogous to the Ganski-Frist
9 bill which exempts medical providers from infringement
10 claims on a variety of procedures.

11 So Number 2 is, the creation of an exemption
12 from infringement for those who use patent-protected
13 genes in the pursuit of research. Number 3 is, the
14 Secretary should discourage the seeking, granting,
15 invoking of simple association patent claims, because it
16 was the feeling of most of the Task Force that
17 association patent claims represent basic laws of nature
18 that cannot be invented around and should not be owned.

19 We are advocating recommendations that promote
20 adherence to norms and we'll need to have a discussion,
21 the major discussion being, should there be teeth put in
22 regulations that seek to get, for example, fundees to

1 adhere to norms of licensing, et cetera.

2 Enhancing transparency in licensing is
3 important. Again, it will be a matter of debate whether
4 we want to put teeth [in the regulations] or simply
5 suggest these things.

6 We have advocated an advisory board that would,
7 in an ongoing way, assess problems in the realm of gene
8 patents. I would add that we tailored these subsequent
9 recommendations after 1, 2, and 3, because we recognize
10 that statutory changes take awhile. The Secretary may
11 not choose to implement them, and therefore we wanted
12 some other recommendations as a fallback, basically.

13 Federal efforts to promote broad licensing and
14 patient access, we've got recommendations that encourage
15 these things. Again, we can have a discussion about
16 whether this should be more than simple encouragement.
17 Things like exploring whether approaches to addressing
18 patent thickets, like patent pools and clearinghouses,
19 may offer some solutions; whether the Bayh-Dole Act gives
20 agencies authority to influence how grantees license
21 patented inventions is not clear. We've asked for
22 clarification about that particular point.

1 Finally -- I think this is the end -- it was
2 felt that it might be helpful to the USPTO if an advisory
3 committee were established to advise not only about
4 ongoing dilemmas with the fast clip of technology
5 advancement but how to incorporate the legal decisions
6 that are in the pipeline now into this changing
7 landscape.

8 So we don't have a whole lot of time for lunch,
9 but we'll come back, and then go through those
10 recommendations and discussion in general.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you very much. It's a lot
12 to cover and a lot to think about.

13 So we're going to break for lunch now. We are
14 running late and it's going to be a little challenging to
15 get everybody back since we're going to pretty much have
16 to scatter to various eating places in the neighborhood,
17 and you have a list in your packet, but we had allowed 45
18 minutes. That's probably going to be a little tight. So
19 let's plan to start at 1:00. I think the public
20 commenters are able to stay, so we can get all of your
21 input, which we need.

22 So, why don't we break and see everybody back

1 at 1:00.

2 [Lunch recess taken at 12:02 p.m.]

3 + + +

1 who is with Health Futures and is speaking on behalf of
2 the Association for Molecular Pathology.

3 Do you mind speaking from up here? I know it's
4 a long way away. Welcome. We look forward to your
5 comments.

6 **PUBLIC COMMENT SESSION**

7 **Jennifer Leib**

8 **Association for Molecular Pathology**

9 MS. LEIB: Thanks. Hi. My name is Jennifer
10 Leib. I'm speaking on behalf of the Association for
11 Molecular Pathology. I'll refer to them as AMP for the
12 rest of my comments to keep it simpler.

13 This week, your committee is focusing on three
14 areas of policy that has great interest to us and we
15 would like to express our gratitude to the committee for
16 highlighting the concerns and challenges with gene
17 patents, direct-to-consumer genetic testing, and the
18 genetic nondiscrimination bill.

19 First, as many of you are aware, AMP is a lead
20 plaintiff in the recent lawsuit brought by the American
21 Civil Liberties Union challenging the validity of the
22 BRCA1 and BRCA2 patents.

1 Let me be clear. AMP opposes the patenting of
2 DNA, of all DNA. While we have concerns about that, our
3 concern does extend beyond that to the negative impact
4 that can occur on to patient access to tests as well as
5 the threat to the quality of testing associated with the
6 exclusive and restrictive licensing practices that we've
7 observed in many cases, including that of the genes with
8 spinomuscular atrophy and the Connexum-26 and Connexum-30
9 genes.

10 At the last meeting, we did encourage the
11 committee to continue exploring additional cases of the
12 studies that demonstrate this point and are very pleased
13 to see just before lunch the review of the report's
14 findings that the committee did follow up on our request.
15 We look forward to hearing the additional discussion this
16 afternoon.

17 AMP completed its position statement on direct
18 access to genetic testing in 2007 and it's posted in its
19 entirety on our website. AMP views genetic testing as an
20 integral part of the healthcare system with a great
21 potential for future test development and use.

22 However, AMP believes that genetic tests should

1 be provided in the public only through the services of an
2 appropriate healthcare professional and a properly-
3 certified laboratory.

4 Additionally, AMP is concerned that genetic
5 tests sold directly to the consumer have the potential to
6 do harm, mislead consumers about the significance of the
7 results and promote the purchase of products not proven
8 to be medically useful.

9 When considering this nascent industry, AMP
10 requests that the committee review the practices of these
11 companies, including the testing offered, the laboratory
12 certification, the claims made about test results, and
13 access to qualified health professionals throughout the
14 testing process.

15 Additionally, the committee should solicit
16 feedback from the every-day consumers of these services
17 to learn about any benefits, harms, misconceptions, their
18 genetic literacy, changes in health behavior, and other
19 health outcomes.

20 Last, AMP has been a supporter of the Genetic
21 Information Nondiscrimination Act, known as GINA, for
22 almost 20 years. We have actively participated in the

1 long struggle to see these protections enacted by
2 Congress and we're currently working to ensure that
3 GINA's protections are not weakened or otherwise
4 undermined.

5 Earlier this year in the healthcare reform
6 debate, members of the Senate proposed offering an
7 amendment that would make employer-based wellness
8 programs exempt from complying with the Civil Rights Act,
9 the Americans With Disabilities Act, and GINA.

10 As we heard this morning, GINA currently allows
11 wellness programs to collect genetic information,
12 including family medical history, if the program meets
13 the criteria voluntary, and as we heard this morning, the
14 interim G&A regulations discussed says that if an
15 employer offers a cash incentive to participate in a
16 wellness program, the program is not voluntary, that
17 incentive is considered not incentive but actually a
18 penalty to those who choose not to participate.

19 Employers want to offer cash incentives to
20 encourage people to enroll in their programs and instead
21 of attempting to directly address the definition of
22 voluntary in the regulations, they simply tried to

1 circumvent these important civil rights and privacy
2 protections through the healthcare reform debate.

3 AMP joined 28 organizations in signing a letter
4 urging the Senate Finance Committee to defeat this
5 amendment and fortunately the GINA advocates won this
6 time.

7 AMP is hopeful that the regulations currently
8 being finalized by the agencies will eliminate many of
9 the potential loopholes for employers and health insurers
10 to avoid complying with GINA. Recently, we were made
11 aware of the likelihood of genetic testing companies
12 partnering with health insurers to offer tests to
13 enrollees.

14 While an insurer can inform members about a
15 genetic test without violating GINA, AMP is concerned
16 that the public is not armed with the knowledge they need
17 to know that they have the right to decline testing
18 without any consequences to their coverage.

19 AMP encourages the committee to explore these
20 ongoing attempts to weaken or circumvent GINA, bring
21 attention to this recent activity and work to educate the
22 public about the protections afforded by GINA. The

1 amendment in the Finance Committee served as a strong
2 reminder to those that oppose GINA will continue their
3 fights to weaken and unravel its protections and we
4 supporters will have to do the same and continue our
5 fight to protect patients from genetic discrimination.

6 Thank you.

7 DR. TEUTSCH: We appreciate your input at these
8 meetings on a regular basis, so thank you.

9 Were there any questions or comments for
10 Jennifer?

11 [No response.]

12 DR. TEUTSCH: Okay. Well, thank you.

13 Our next speaker is from the Biotechnology
14 Industry Organization. I'm afraid I may get your name
15 wrong. Is it Tom DeLenge?

16 MR. DeLENCE: That's perfect. You're the first
17 one to ever do that on the first try.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: I was advised, but I still get it
19 wrong. Anyway, welcome. We appreciate your input. We
20 obviously heard from your organization as part of the
21 public comment period in writing, and we welcome your
22 comments this afternoon.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Tom DeLenge

Biotechnology Industry Organization

MR. DeLENCE: Well, thank you very much. I appreciate the committee letting us have this opportunity today to talk about your report.

I want to start by just talking a bit about bio. We represent mostly start-up companies that are engaged in biotechnology across an entire platform of the industry, so healthcare, but also agricultural, biofuels, industrial applications, environmental applications. We also represent a lot of academic research centers and other people involved in the biotechnology industry, not just companies.

We completely support the mission of this committee. We support enhancing access to patients for genetic tests. That is what our companies do every day, and the partners that we have in the universities. That is what they get up and do every day. They want to create products that people can access. So let's start from that premise, that we completely support that.

There are companies, though, and again, most of them are privately-held, that rely on venture capital,

1 the private equity markets, to raise the money to do this
2 fascinating and really valuable research that they do.
3 They need to have IP protection. It's the core link.
4 Every study that is looked at this has confirmed that,
5 and this committee also recognizes that important link
6 for the applied research and development work that they
7 do every day. It is critical, it is absolutely critical
8 that we have that link.

9 This committee's emphasis on securing access
10 and trying to resolve the problems that they have
11 identified is one that we completely agree with, and
12 Jennifer, the prior speaker, we were big supporters of
13 the GINA Act, as well. We are very active in this space
14 and we want patients to get the best access to genetic
15 information that they can get.

16 We commend this committee's hard work. The
17 case studies that you commissioned were very valuable.
18 They really took an in-depth look at many of these
19 issues.

20 Unfortunately, what they provide are not really
21 any kind of consistent or broad themes or conclusions
22 that could be based on them, and that is where I think we

1 part ways with the Committee, [which] is that when you
2 look at those case studies, what you see is that there is
3 some good; there is some bad; there are problems that
4 have been fixed; there is some that seems to work very
5 well.

6 The idea of trying to tie it back to the
7 patents and licensing is where the committee's report
8 gets extremely weak, to be quite frank. There is just
9 very little evidence that it is the patents or the
10 licensing that are creating these problems.

11 The emphasis of the committee seems to be more
12 on sole-source providers and suggesting that somehow
13 there is that link between the patenting and exclusive
14 rights and sole-source providers. Of course, that can be
15 true. It's not always true and the notion that somehow
16 we need to attack the patents and the exclusive licenses
17 to cure problems that can occur even without patents and
18 without exclusive licenses seems to be overkill, seems to
19 be overreaching.

20 We are deeply concerned that the committee
21 would then kind of turn the question around. The initial
22 question was are patents and licensing causing harm? Not

1 being able to find evidence of that in any broader
2 consistent way, they then say, well, maybe patents really
3 aren't even necessary. So we should restrict them for
4 that reason.

5 We're very deeply concerned with that. We
6 don't believe that neither this committee's charge nor
7 the methodology that it employed would really support
8 such findings. We don't believe that you can actually
9 look at some case studies and then determine on a broad
10 way whether patents are necessary or exclusive licenses
11 are necessary for innovation in this very diverse area.
12 It may not be true.

13 I'm not going to say we always have to have
14 patents and exclusive licenses. Many of our companies
15 have non-exclusive licenses, okay, but the idea that we
16 can kind of make generalizations upfront about when and
17 where it might be appropriate, we think, is very
18 misguided.

19 We don't think it's worth taking that bet that
20 somehow we don't need patents or exclusive licenses, that
21 we can start to restrict those without costs. Quite
22 frankly, we may never know the costs of that, but we will

1 know who the losers will be and that will be patients,
2 the patients of tomorrow who are waiting for this next
3 wave of innovation from biotechnology.

4 Before we upset 25 years of largely successful
5 university-industry collaboration, we must have more
6 evidence than this. I would implore you to look at all
7 of the data, including the data that the committee seems
8 to have ignored, even though it commissioned, which was a
9 study that's in your Appendix 2. It gets very little
10 discussion in the committee's report, but I find it
11 absolutely fascinating.

12 It suggests that the role of patents and
13 licensing in diagnostics is much more complex than the
14 committee's summary conclusions would lead one to
15 believe. We believe that the burden is on the proponents
16 of change, not the other way around. We don't believe
17 that burden's been sustained.

18 Your own findings in three-year case studies
19 show that in some cases patents do play an important role
20 in this area and yet the recommendations seem to be all
21 about how do we restrict that, how do we restrict
22 patenting and exclusive licensing.

1 We believe that when you look at the other main
2 assumption, which is that in this particular area of
3 diagnostics, that somehow patents aren't necessary
4 because most of it's done by the federal government or
5 through federal funding.

6 Again, we're not sure that the data absolutely
7 supports that, and it really, quite honestly, kind of
8 undermines what my members get up every day to go and do.

9 They are the ones discovering, not just academic
10 researchers but for-profit entities and companies,
11 they're out there discovering genes and the gene
12 associations that are helping people cure disease, and to
13 suggest that somehow, well, we don't need to worry about
14 that part of this, we can leave it all to the academic
15 researchers who have no profit motive I don't believe is
16 what the society wants or will lead to the type of
17 innovation that we need.

18 The only truly broad-based study commissioned
19 by the committee is that Appendix 2, and we need to
20 actually wait for the results of that before we make
21 conclusions.

22 We are concerned the committee relies on a

1 series of conflicting anecdotes and theories of possible
2 future harm to propose recommendations that could risk
3 severe unintended consequences not just for biotechnology
4 but for the patients.

5 We're not saying that every patent that has
6 ever been issued in this area is good or should have been
7 issued. I think the system has evolved over time. We're
8 not saying that every patent has to be exclusively
9 licensed for it to be developed. That's not true. Okay?

10 All we're saying is that the system that we
11 have today maintain the flexibility so that we can deal
12 with these cases as they arise rather than attempting to
13 set broad rules and federal mandates that people have to
14 work around or get out of, have to prove your way out of
15 a system rather than start with the flexibility that's
16 clearly needed.

17 The evidence shows that this flexible system
18 seems to work better than the more rigid system that is
19 applied to intramural federal research, although the data
20 is not conclusive on that, and we want to see that data.

21 We want to see what that shows.

22 Stepping back, when you look at the overall

1 system, there's no doubt that this is working very, very
2 well ever since we passed the Bayh-Dole Act 25 years ago.

3 The problems that have arisen have been quickly
4 resolved. Your committee has even acknowledged that in
5 your report and working together, we can address any
6 concerns that arise going forward, but my concern here is
7 that these proposals that you're recommending are just
8 going to drive us further apart. They're divisive and
9 unnecessarily so.

10 The proposals would undermine the
11 enforceability of patent rights, would chill patent
12 private sector investment, throw a monkey wrench into the
13 very successful Bayh-Dole Act, which has fostered
14 technology transfer, spurring economic growth in all of
15 the states, innovation that's benefited patients, the
16 worldwide. This is what Congress intended when it passed
17 the Act 25 years ago. It's working well.

18 Contrary to the suggestions in your report,
19 your recommendations on exempting certain acts of
20 infringement on the use of patented articles on the sale,
21 on the sale of commercially-infringing products can find
22 no precedent in any prior patent law or act of Congress.

1 The Ganski-Frist exemption is nothing like what is being
2 proposed in these recommendations.

3 The research use exemption that you propose is
4 nothing like the Hatch-Waxman research use exemption.
5 Neither of those gives license to the use of patented
6 articles.

7 DR. TEUTSCH: We just have a couple more
8 minutes. Can you sum up?

9 MR. DeLENCE: I'll sum up.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Thanks.

11 MR. DeLENCE: For more than 200 years, we have
12 avoided doing down the slippery slope of trying to say
13 certain areas should be patentable and certain shouldn't
14 be or we should restrict this or restrict that as a
15 matter of fact. That's based on our strong belief, borne
16 out by wave after wave of innovation, that patents do
17 spur innovation, even though they do entail temporary
18 costs.

19 As the editors of "Nature" recently said,
20 specifically on this debate, the fundamental premise of
21 our innovation system "shouldn't be discarded purely
22 because there is a vague hint that harm might one day

1 occur."

2 Now I fear it's too late maybe to change some
3 of the members of this committee's mind. The final draft
4 report that we saw this morning seems to even go further
5 than the initial public draft report which received a lot
6 of criticism by many stakeholders in and outside of
7 government. So this process has not been ideal.

8 I would suggest that there are so many legal
9 implications to what the committee is proposing that this
10 needs another scrub. I don't know what kind of legal
11 advice you received on patents. I would be interested to
12 see what the PTO has to say about your reference to the
13 association claims as being simply laws of nature. I
14 don't think they would agree with that.

15 I think that they are very valuable,
16 potentially, some of those claims and need to be
17 supported, when appropriate, and I wonder also about the
18 U.S. trade implications in this and whether you've
19 consulted at all with the U.S. Trade Representative's
20 Office. I think they would be very concerned that some
21 of these proposals would violate our international
22 obligations under the Tripps Agreement.

1 So I do caution this committee that I think
2 these issues are hugely important. They need to be
3 thought through very carefully, and I would urge you to
4 think about that one a little bit more.

5 If I can make one last comment? The access
6 issues that have been identified are truly a concern of
7 ours. We think, quite honestly, when you look at those
8 access issues, the best way of resolving those are not
9 trying to change the patent system, which is so divisive
10 and is going to take forever, but working with us to make
11 sure that the major insurers who cover indigent
12 populations in this country actually will pay for these
13 diagnostic tests, whether they're provided by sole-source
14 providers or not.

15 It shouldn't have to be provided by the
16 designated Medicaid lab. Okay? Let's work together to
17 try to improve access because that is where the rubber
18 meets the road here, right. We want to make sure that
19 patients are getting coverage for these tests. That is
20 critical, and I urge you to work with us to get that
21 accomplished, and we will be your partner in that. We
22 cannot be a partner in undermining the patent system.

1 Thank you very much.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thanks, Tom. Any
3 questions for Tom? Sheila.

4 MS. WALCOFF: Sorry to keep you up there, Tom.

5 MR. DeLENGE: That's okay.

6 MS. WALCOFF: Just on that very last point. I
7 have some familiarity with the reimbursement system, not
8 a huge depth of expertise in that, but could you just
9 comment on behalf of your members about how it is that
10 those tests come to be reimbursed by private or public
11 payers, and is a patent and licensing issue interfering
12 directly with the ability for reimbursement to be covered
13 for these particular tests?

14 MR. DeLENGE: That's a good question.
15 Unfortunately, I'm not a reimbursement expert, so I don't
16 know. There are some other folks from Bio here.

17 Darrell, I don't know if you want to come up.

18 I would think that because the problem really
19 arises in the context of Medicaid for the most part, not
20 so much the private-payer system, what happens with
21 Medicaid, my guess is, there are certain designated
22 laboratories that get the bulk of Medicaid business in a

1 particular state, and they have contracts with the
2 Medicaid agency. It may be that they are not allowed to
3 use some of these other sole-source providers of
4 diagnostic labs, but I don't know that.

5 Darrell, do you have any idea about the issue
6 of how those lab tests get reimbursed?

7 MR. PRITCHARD: Sure. Absolutely.

8 MR. DeLENGE: This is Darrell Pritchard, who
9 handles this issue for Bio.

10 MR. PRITCHARD: Yes, I'm Darrell Pritchard with
11 Bio, and I lead on the Diagnostics issue.

12 Diagnostic tests are reimbursed typically
13 through Medicare through a lab fee schedule and this has
14 been --

15 DR. TEUTSCH: This is mostly about Medicaid, of
16 course.

17 MR. PRITCHARD: About Medicaid.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: Medicaid access is what we've
19 been talking about, not Medicare.

20 Mara, did you have something?

21 MS. ASPINALL: Well, I don't know if we want to
22 deal with this issue now because I think there's a

1 reimbursement issue from Medicare and Medicaid, and also
2 an issue in terms of what is required for the labs to be
3 able to give free access because the access system for
4 drugs and therapeutics are not equivalent and,
5 unfortunately, something that didn't get as much focus in
6 the report as I would have liked which is a key issue in
7 terms of having full access, particularly for these
8 tests.

9 MS. WALCOFF: I guess, one quick follow-up
10 thing I'm kind of wondering is, are the Medicaid payer
11 policies consistent across all states? Do they vary
12 state by state? What sort of influence does the federal
13 government have directly on the payer policies, state by
14 state, for whether or not they would reimburse them?

15 MR. DeLENCE: Sorry. My guess is you're going
16 to find a lot of variability at the state level and
17 people on the committee actually may have more expertise
18 in that since they've looked at this. In fact, I believe
19 you issued a report a year or two ago that looked at
20 this.

21 My point, Sheila, really, in raising it was not
22 so much that I know the answer to that, but it seems to

1 me it's a much more fruitful avenue for this committee --
2 and particularly since this is an advisory committee to
3 the Secretary of Health and Human Services, not to the
4 Secretary of Commerce, which runs our patent system --
5 that it would be more appropriate to look at ways that
6 the Secretary of HHS can really use her authority, which
7 is quite substantial, to look at things about CLIA
8 laboratory testing and oversight regulation
9 reimbursement.

10 Obviously, the Secretary of HHS oversees
11 Medicare and Medicaid, looking at those access issues
12 that Mara mentioned. I think that's a much more fruitful
13 area of inquiry and will have much quicker and more
14 immediate impacts on patient access.

15 MS. WALCOFF: I appreciate that, and I think
16 that's a lot of where my questions lie today. So thank
17 you.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: Why don't we take one or two more
19 questions, and then we'll move on?

20 DR. DALE: I'm just interested in your general
21 position. Is it that every gene and potentially every
22 protein in each component of our bodies should have a

1 patent associated with it?

2 MR. DeLENGE: No, not at all.

3 DR. DALE: Only those with some position or
4 view of opportunity?

5 MR. DeLENGE: Well, what we want to do is we
6 want to try to explore the human genes to figure out what
7 genes and which gene mutations might actually lead or
8 cause disease, or make some tumors more susceptible to
9 treatments than others. People tend to talk about gene
10 patents as if we've just invented the gene. We didn't
11 invent the gene.

12 What we're trying to figure out is what that
13 gene does, and that is a critically important avenue of
14 inquiry, because it's going to help with this entire
15 development of biotechnology and biologics, and in fact
16 personalized medicine.

17 So you think about the products like Herceptin,
18 which is a therapeutic, not a diagnostic, obviously, but
19 grew out of the notion of, we discovered that the Her2
20 gene provides a susceptibility to this greater, more
21 aggressive form of breast cancer, and then we could
22 target a therapeutic on that.

1 So I'm not suggesting every gene should be
2 patented. I think someone said about 20 percent of them
3 are, but they also shouldn't be banned.

4 DR. DALE: You understand that this report,
5 though, just deals with testing.

6 MR. DeLENCE: Absolutely, but I think if you
7 look at the Appendix 2 study, which is still not yet
8 complete, but if you look at that, what it shows is that
9 you can't tell from the initial patent applications,
10 oftentimes, what the applications of that invention will
11 be. Sometimes, it is the very same patent that fosters
12 diagnostic development that will foster therapeutic
13 development. Many of the diagnostic patents are method
14 patents.

15 DR. TEUTSCH: Tom, I'm going to ask you to be
16 brief. I know we could go on, but --

17 MR. DeLENCE: I understand. I'm trying to be
18 responsive to the question, which is that, in Appendix 2,
19 it goes through in some detail how it is very difficult
20 to say we are only focusing on diagnostic patents.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: I know Jim wants to respond to
22 that. I am going to get Gwen and Julio, and then we're

1 going to need to move on.

2 DR. EVANS: I just want to mention to the
3 Committee and the audience the Appendix 2 issue. Bio has
4 placed a great deal of emphasis on the study that is
5 related in Appendix 2. I would emphasize to you that the
6 reason that it was put into the Appendix, and the very
7 good reason that it did not get a lot of play is that it
8 is, by its own admission, highly preliminary data, which
9 has left out a tremendous amount data that has yet to be
10 analyzed.

11 Moreover, the design of the study is such that
12 it is essentially looking at the generation of royalties
13 as its barometer for the impact of tests. The venue in
14 which the great majority of diagnostic testing is done in
15 this country is in laboratory-developed tests at, for
16 example, university laboratories. There are no royalties
17 associated with that.

18 Therefore, this study, while I think of mild
19 interest, the effects will be transparent to this study
20 in the realm where most of this testing is done.
21 Therefore, it does not make much sense to put very much
22 stock in this study as any kind of definitive issue.

1 DR. TEUTSCH: Gwen.

2 MR DeLENCE: Can I respond to that? Perhaps
3 you might want to author's study to come and respond to
4 that.

5 DR. EVANS: I've talked about it at length with
6 Lori Pressman, who headed up the study.

7 MR. DeLENCE: And she agrees with your
8 characterization?

9 DR. EVANS: It is the case. She definitely
10 admits that where most testing is done, that study is
11 unable to address it.

12 MR. DeLENCE: The point of her study, if I
13 understand it correctly, is to look at two things. One
14 was, can you tell from a patent what the application of
15 that invention might be, diagnostic, gene-based
16 therapies, otherwise, and I think she concluded you
17 can't.

18 That is very important, because you're making
19 broad-based generalizations and recommendations about
20 what we call patents on genes, or in the diagnostic field
21 of use.

22 Those are things that we don't believe are as

1 simple as the Committee's report suggests to understand
2 which ones we're talking about. That uncertainty is
3 really a problem.

4 DR. EVANS: That actually is not the point of
5 the study. And again, the metric that was used was the
6 generation of royalties, which is not a metric that is
7 applicable to where most diagnostic tests are done in
8 this country.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: Gwen.

10 MS. DARIEN: I would just like to say as a
11 patient and a patient advocate that, and this is just a
12 comment, which is that we are asked, all of us are asked
13 to be open-minded about the issues of patents and about
14 the issues of IP, but I have to say that when patient
15 benefit is just brought up as the justification for a
16 certain line of thinking, I would ask you to think about
17 it in a little more depth than just saying patient
18 benefit.

19 I know a lot about the Herceptin story, I know
20 a lot about the BRCA1 and -2 story, having been a patient
21 advocate for 15 years working in cancer. So please don't
22 just put out patient benefit to elicit some kind of more

1 sympathetic response.

2 Thank you.

3 MR. DeLENCE: I thought that's what this
4 committee was trying to accomplish.

5 DR. TEUTSCH: Julio.

6 DR. LICINIO: I have one kind of
7 comment/question, which is this. As it was said a little
8 earlier, very soon, maybe like within five years, I
9 think, certainly within 10, the cost of whole-genome
10 sequencing is going to be such that individual testing is
11 going to make no sense or is not going to be cost
12 effective.

13 So, how do you address or deal with the issue
14 of patents for specific genes, for specific genetic
15 sequences that are part of the genome, when someone can
16 just get the whole-genome sequence? And, would such
17 patents prevent whole-genome sequencing efforts in the
18 application of data that comes from that?

19 Let's say if I have my genome sequenced, and a
20 part of the sequence is indicative of a disease but
21 someone else has the patent on that, can the results be
22 given to me?

1 MR. DeLENCE: I think what you'll find -- this
2 goes back to the issue I was just referring to -- which
3 is that you don't really quite know. You can't say, what
4 is the gene patent. I think that the answer to your
5 question really depends. It's going to depend on the
6 patents, how they're drafted, what they claim. They're
7 all going to be very, very different.

8 So I can't give you a short answer, but I can
9 tell you that those issues have been largely worked
10 around in other sectors of the economy. That happens all
11 the time. There are aggregators, if you will, of tests,
12 of Blackberrys, of anything else. They have to work
13 through that. They've got to get licenses, or sometimes
14 people don't enforce their licenses, or they have
15 agreements to not enforce them.

16 It is complicated. I'm not going to suggest
17 it's not, but I do believe that we've been able to work
18 around those things in other areas. I would see the same
19 types of things developing here that the committee talks
20 about. Patent pooling, we're supportive of that. There
21 are all sorts of things that we could do to try to
22 address that concern, but it's a hard one. I'm not going

1 to stand up here and say it's easy.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: I know we'll be revisiting many
3 of these issues over the course of the afternoon.

4 Tom, we really do appreciate the perspective of
5 Bio and all of the things that your industry does bring
6 to help us accomplish our mission.

7 MR. DeLENCE: Thank you, and I appreciate,
8 again, the opportunity to be here.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you for coming.

10 We'll turn now to the College of American
11 Pathologists and Fay Shamanski Fay, always are happy to
12 hear from the College. So welcome.

13 **Fay Shamanski**

14 **College of American Pathologists**

15 MS. SHAMANSKI: Good afternoon. My name is Fay
16 Shamanski, and I'm here representing the College of
17 American Pathologists, a national medical specialty
18 society representing more than 17,000 pathologists who
19 practice anatomic lab pathology and laboratory medicine
20 in the United States and Canada.

21 The College has been a leader in developing
22 quality improvement programs for laboratories, including

1 programs in molecular pathology and cytogenetics. As a
2 medical specialist in the diagnosis of disease,
3 pathologists have a keen interest in ensuring that gene
4 patents do not restrict the ability of physicians to
5 provide quality diagnostic services to the patients they
6 serve.

7 The College provided written comments on the
8 draft patent report to you in May and today would like to
9 reaffirm our view that human health-related gene patents
10 have an inhibitory effect on pathologists and other
11 laboratory physicians' ability to practice medicine and
12 that this in turn impacts patients' access to important
13 medical testing services.

14 Pathologists have a long track record of
15 delivering high-quality services to patients through the
16 practice of laboratory medicine and have demonstrated
17 through the introduction of thousands of laboratory tests
18 used daily in clinical practice that the best interests
19 of their patient is the primary driver of innovation in
20 laboratory testing.

21 For pathologists in particular, it is more
22 often clinical need manifested by the requests from their

1 clinical colleagues that spurs novel developments in
2 medical testing and not intellectual property.

3 The College has a clear policy statement in
4 opposition to gene patents which has been in effect since
5 2000 and that policy states that "The College of American
6 Pathologists believes that patents on genes, genetic
7 variants, and genotype/phenotype correlations, when
8 enforced to restrict diagnostic genetic testing, violate
9 the longstanding prohibition against patenting natural
10 phenomenon."

11 Moreover, because genes are naturally-occurring
12 substances, we believe that under most circumstances,
13 they should not be patented. Given the existing patents
14 and pending patent applications, the College supports
15 legislation that will protect physicians and other
16 providers of clinical laboratory services from
17 enforcement of any patents on genes and against liability
18 for infringement of patents on genes, regardless of the
19 date of issuance of those patents.

20 The College believes that gene patents,
21 licensing fees related to those patents, exclusive
22 licensing agreements, prevent physicians and laboratories

1 from providing DNA- and RNA-based diagnostic services to
2 their patients. They limit access and interfere with
3 medical education and clinical research.

4 Especially troubling is the fact that under
5 patent protection, the understanding of the utility of
6 the test, as well as the underlying disease processes,
7 can become proprietary, thereby imposing a profound
8 change in how the profession and the public acquire
9 knowledge about these tests and their applications.

10 In order to address the impact of patents on
11 patient access to medical testing, the College believes
12 that the options in the draft report related to statutory
13 change, as outlined in the report, are the most likely to
14 succeed. These options clearly address the impact of
15 patents and licensing on patient access by addressing the
16 core problem affecting the ability of pathologists and
17 other laboratory professionals to provide medical testing
18 services to their patients.

19 The College understands the challenges that
20 exist to ensure that the appropriate balance between
21 promoting innovation, ensuring patient access to genetic
22 testing services and is absolutely committed to that end.

1 is to provide the best possible genetic testing services
2 to physicians who treat patients with genetic disease.
3 We perform 200 tests and we license gene patents for many
4 of our tests from universities and in turn we pay
5 royalties to the universities that support further
6 genetic research.

7 We are a provider of high-quality genetic
8 tests. We make every effort to ensure our tests are
9 widely available. We conduct physician outreach and
10 education to educate them about the benefits and the
11 limitations of our tests and because of the volume of the
12 tests that we conduct, we can be very proficient in the
13 tests that we perform, performing high-quality tests, and
14 we can offer tests for very rare diseases.

15 And now, I would like to depart from my written
16 remarks and I would like to talk about some factual
17 inaccuracies from the presentation that Dr. Evans
18 presented this morning. Several of them mentioned Athena
19 and I would like to correct the inaccuracies.

20 One concerned our ataxia testing, also called
21 SCA testing, and bundling. Athena offers testing for 18
22 different ataxia genes. Each of these tests is available

1 as a single gene test. There are also a number of ataxia
2 test panels available. Anybody can order -- well, any
3 physician or client can order any one of the single tests
4 or any combination of the tests or they can order the
5 panels. So that is a factual inaccuracy I would like to
6 correct.

7 Second was on Connexum-26 and there was some
8 mention about the availability of prenatal testing and
9 newborn screening. Athena has sublicensed our Connexum-
10 26 hearing loss genetic test to a company formerly called
11 Pediatrixs which is now called PerkinElmer Genetics.
12 That is the largest provider of newborn screening test
13 services in the United States and they are offering the
14 Connexum-26 test, this newborn screening test, under
15 sublicense from Athena.

16 Athena is not in the newborn screening business
17 which is a different business from testing older
18 patients.

19 A third inaccuracy that I would like to correct
20 from today's presentation concerns the dystrophin gene
21 for Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy, and there was also some
22 mention about commercial labs and the extent to which

1 they deal with indigent patients' and indigent families'
2 ability to pay for tests.

3 Our dystrophin test, through cooperation
4 between Athena and the Muscular Dystrophy Association, we
5 created a program where the MDA would pay the co-pays for
6 our dystrophin test, thereby making the test more
7 accessible for indigent patients than it otherwise would
8 have been.

9 Finally, a broad issue I have with inaccuracies
10 in today's presentation. I didn't hear enough about the
11 benefits of exclusive licensing of genetic tests, and I
12 also didn't hear anything about the negatives of non-
13 exclusive licensing.

14 One of the most widely-known and tragically one
15 of the least-ordered genetic tests in the United States
16 today is the Warfarin Metabolism Test. The FDA has
17 recommended that all patients started on Warfarin, a
18 blood thinner for heart attack patients and stroke
19 patients, be genetically tested with two genes as a
20 Warfarin Metabolism Test.

21 The patent owners decided to non-exclusively
22 license the Warfarin test. About 10 labs launched the

1 test two or three years ago. Athena launched a Warfarin
2 test. We discontinued that test because we received no
3 orders and so non-exclusive licensing in the case of the
4 Warfarin test is causing today in the United States
5 perhaps a few hundred Warfarin tests to be conducted when
6 over one million patients in the U.S. are started on
7 Warfarin each year in the United States and there have
8 been cost-benefit studies that suggest that, in addition
9 to patient trauma, millions of dollars could be saved in
10 the system if Warfarin genetic testing was widely done.

11 This is a negative and a cost to us from non-
12 exclusive licensing. If there was an exclusive license
13 for the Warfarin genetic test, that exclusive holder of
14 the patent rights would have invested in widespread
15 marketing to educate physicians about the test, and
16 instead we do not have that test ordered in any
17 significant way in the United States today.

18 So returning to my written remarks, --

19 DR. TEUTSCH: Just to be clear, we only have
20 another minute or two.

21 MR. HENRY: Yes. Returning to the written
22 remarks, we feel that the policy recommendations of the

1 report are not in line with some of the conclusions Dr.
2 Evans mentioned. The conclusion thus far patents
3 covering genetic tests and related licensing practices do
4 not appear to be causing wide or lasting barriers to
5 patient or clinical access. That suggests that policy
6 recommendations to improve access do not follow from the
7 research results, and so in the interests of time, I'll
8 cut it off there.

9 Thank you.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thank you. I think we
11 have your written comments, so we appreciate that.

12 Liz, did you want to say anything about
13 clarifying what the FDA says about Warfarin testing?

14 DR. MANSFIELD: The Warfarin drug label was
15 modified in 2007 to recommend genetic testing to be used,
16 the results of which would be used together with
17 consideration of other clinical variables to determine an
18 appropriate Warfarin dose. In the absence of that, I
19 believe doctors have continued to use INR successfully to
20 adjust dose to an appropriate dose.

21 I don't know that there is existing literature
22 that establishes exactly how those tests should be used

1 in every patient or evidence that use of the test will
2 necessarily reduce adverse events and until there's more
3 information available, I would suggest that that may not
4 be a good example.

5 DR. TEUTSCH: We're running kind of short on
6 time, but we've got Paul, Muin, Jim, Andrea, and I'll try
7 and remember all of this, and Mike.

8 DR. BILLINGS: So I just have a comment. This
9 is Paul Billings. A comment and a question.

10 My comment is that, as far as the Warfarin test
11 is concerned, there is a clinical need for better
12 management of Warfarin patients. That's quite clear and
13 so whether it's the Warfarin genetic test or others that
14 are going to lead to better management of Warfarin
15 patients, the INR, as we currently use it in this
16 country, is probably not the answer.

17 But my question about the Athena presentation
18 is for those tests for which you hold an exclusive
19 license and are the sole-source provider, do you have
20 some assessment of how much of the market you are in fact
21 servicing of those people who potentially could use the
22 test?

1 My impression is that it's rather small,
2 actually a small fraction of the accessible market, which
3 would suggest that your comments about marketing may not
4 be entirely successful.

5 MR. HENRY: I would say that for some of our
6 tests, we have penetrated the potential market. For
7 others, we have not fully penetrated.

8 A good example would be our spastic paraplegia
9 test. This is a very rare disease. We offer a number of
10 genes for this rare disease, and we feel that with fairly
11 well-educated neurologists that we educate about our
12 test, about our spastic paraplegia testing and we've
13 penetrated that market.

14 We also offer some tests for other diseases
15 where there's still room to conduct more education and
16 further penetrate the market.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: Muin.

18 DR. KHOURY: I would like to come back to the
19 Warfarin story because you used it as an example of how
20 many lives could be saved. You know, you tied it to the
21 patent story, and I think it's a question of clinical
22 utility. It has nothing to do with patent. People are

1 struggling to know how to use the pharmacogenomics of
2 those two genes. The management of Warfarin therapy,
3 until clinical trials are done, this has nothing to do
4 with the patenting.

5 So, I mean, I think you should correct that
6 because it's highly misleading, what you just said. I
7 mean, you tied that story to the potentially-damaging
8 effect of patenting and it has nothing to do with it.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: Jim.

10 DR. EVANS: Yes. I just wanted to let you know
11 that we certainly want to be correct in any factual
12 errors.

13 The issue with bundling was a quote from a
14 public commenter and it's good to hear that the bundling
15 is not compulsory, so that's great, and we'll make sure
16 that gets corrected in the report.

17 With regard to the Connexum, perhaps I didn't
18 communicate clearly, but I think for whatever reason you
19 misunderstood what the comment was. I don't know if you
20 want to show this on the slides, but it was Slide 34, and
21 it had nothing to do with newborn screening. It was as
22 follows.

1 In the hearing loss case study, it was
2 maintained that Athena had not secured coverage from
3 MediCal. So it was the same issue of reimbursement which
4 is a significant problem with a sole provider of anybody.

5 We're not trying to pick on Athena and so it didn't have
6 anything to do with newborn screening.

7 Then the other comment about dystrophin,
8 [which] also had to do, on Slide 36, with the fact that
9 an advocacy group maintained that Athena had not secured
10 coverage from some payers. Again, that same issue with
11 the difficulties when there is only a single lab that can
12 do a test. It's very difficult for that lab to secure
13 coverage from all payers.

14 So I just wanted to clarify that and we'll make
15 sure that the bundling issue gets corrected.

16 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thank you for that. I'm
17 going to get Sheila, Andrea, Marc, and Mara.

18 MS. WALCOFF: Thanks. Actually, I had a
19 follow-up on that exact slide, Slide 34.

20 Is the reason that you did not get coverage
21 from MediCal because you're a sole-source provider?

22 DR. EVANS: No, that's not the issue. The

1 issue is why coverage isn't obtained. The issue is that
2 when there is a sole-source provider, it is axiomatically
3 much more difficult for all payers to have a contract
4 with that sole-source.

5 For example, MediCal has contracts with a
6 number of labs, many of whom have expressed willingness
7 to do a variety of tests that they are prevented from
8 doing. So it's not an issue of MediCal not contracting
9 with a sole-source provider, per se. It's the difficulty
10 in getting sufficient payers when there is simply one lab
11 that does the test nationally.

12 MS. WALCOFF: I guess I'm just trying to make
13 the connection all the way through, that there's a
14 patenting and licensing issue that results in some sole-
15 source lab that results in a lack of access because the
16 lab cannot get reimbursement from everybody, but I don't
17 see how the issue of the patents follows through to the
18 inability to get -- I'm just not -- I'm not an expert.
19 I'm not making the connection with the reimbursement.

20 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: If you can do the test
21 locally, for example, what we already have arrangements
22 with Medicaid in our state system for payment of these,

1 then we can provide another avenue for these tests to
2 actually be done and access to that particular patient.
3 That's the issue that we are driving at.

4 DR. EVANS: So, for example, when I talk to a
5 clinician --

6 MS. WALCOFF: The patenting issue fixes the
7 reimbursement, because in terms of CMS --

8 DR. EVANS: Patenting or licensing will fix it.
9 Here's the deal. For example, MediCal has a contract
10 for certain tests with the Mayo Clinic. The Mayo Clinic
11 is prevented from doing some tests because the sole-
12 source provider prohibits them from doing it. They have
13 a sole-source license. That makes it extraordinarily
14 difficult for payers to have multiple contracts with each
15 sole-source lab to do tests when there is a lab that they
16 have a contract with that's more than happy to do that
17 test but can't do it.

18 So, clearly, the patenting and licensing
19 situation enables a situation in which we have a
20 significant restriction of the ability to get large
21 populations covered.

22 DR. BILLINGS: But changing the patents isn't

1 the only way to change the system.

2 DR. EVANS: It might not be the only way. It
3 would fix the problem.

4 DR. BILLINGS: Potentially.

5 DR. EVANS: It would clearly fix the problem.
6 It would clearly fix the problem. You would not have a
7 sole-source provider. Then Mayo Clinic can say, okay,
8 we'll do the test.

9 MS. WALCOFF: That's the whole issue of whether
10 Mayo can do it. I mean, can't you ship it to the sole-
11 source provider? The issue is that if California won't
12 pay --

13 DR. EVANS: Again, if you don't have a contract
14 with them, no, you can't.

15 MS. WALCOFF: But shouldn't we be telling them
16 that they have to contract with them?

17 DR. EVANS: Secondly, why do we want to
18 introduce all of these various machinations and
19 complications when you let a lab who can do the test and
20 is willing to do the test do it?

21 DR. TEUTSCH: I'm going to cut this off. We're
22 going to get into this when we get to the

1 recommendations.

2 MS. WALCOFF: I'm sorry. It's a little
3 confusing. I just think there are a lot of reimbursement
4 issues that relate to this that are currently in effect.

5 DR. TEUTSCH: There are a lot of reimbursement
6 issues.

7 Andrea.

8 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Well, Muin brought the
9 issue up of Warfarin genotyping. My laboratory is still
10 offering Warfarin genotyping and we have a very good
11 uptake, until there were some reports from coverage
12 reimbursement issues and where there was a decision not
13 to offer the testing until more clinical trials results
14 are made commonly available.

15 The other issue I wanted to bring up to your
16 attention is that you have a program that helps with the
17 co-pay of the testing for some of these indigent
18 population, but I think the co-pays it not the only issue
19 because you have the co-pay but you also have the cost of
20 the test. When the insurance don't cover the cost of the
21 test, it will be billed back to the patient. So you help
22 with the co-pay but not with the large amount of the cost

1 of the test. Some of these tests are extremely
2 expensive, in the five thousand and six thousand of
3 dollars.

4 MR. HENRY: Would you like me to address that?

5 DR. TEUTSCH: Sure.

6 MR. HENRY: Athena is in three of the eight
7 case studies. At least two of those case studies mention
8 our patient protection plan, which is our co-pay, where,
9 in exchange for a patient agreeing to pay 20 percent of
10 our list price for a test -- and these are patients with
11 commercial insurance -- we will go for reimbursement with
12 the insurance company, regardless of the outcome.
13 Whether we get paid zero up to 80 percent, there is no
14 additional obligation by the patient.

15 If we get paid more than 80 percent, we refund
16 the portion up to the full amount of the co-pay back to
17 the patient.

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But you don't offer
19 that to every place?

20 MR. HENRY: These are for patients with
21 commercial insurance.

22 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Exactly. For patients

1 that don't have commercial insurance, you don't offer
2 that.

3 MR. HENRY: Well, there's other reimbursement
4 options.

5 DR. EVANS: I think it's great that you guys
6 are trying to provide some services to allow indigent
7 patients to get the testing.

8 Unfortunately, as a clinician who deals with
9 patients who need these tests, it's a difficult
10 cumbersome process that is not applicable to many of the
11 patients. So they're still left, in spite of your best
12 efforts, with considerable costs that are simply out of
13 range for them when, if, for example, there was a
14 contract with state Medicaid, it would be covered.

15 So I think it's a good effort, but it's clearly
16 not the answer to this problem.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: Marc, and then we're going to get
18 to you, Mara.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: So at the risk of piling on the
20 Warfarin thing here, there was a third piece of that that
21 needed to be addressed which related to cost
22 effectiveness and it did relate directly to the marketing

1 perspective.

2 As noted, the utility argument and having been
3 involved in some of the larger randomized prospective
4 controlled trials has not been answered and the one cited
5 cost effectiveness analysis that showed cost savings, I
6 think, is increasingly being viewed as using assumptions
7 that are not accurate, which has led to basically a bit
8 of a misperception about the value of the test which then
9 brings the issue to -- and again I don't think that this
10 is necessarily a sole provider issue versus a multiple
11 provider issue.

12 I think extensive marketing of tests without
13 value directly to physicians is not a good thing under
14 any circumstances, that ultimately the evidence base has
15 to be available and anything that impairs our ability to
16 evaluate the evidence base, I think, is problematic.

17 One of the issues that I would have, that I do
18 support that's within this report and recommendations, is
19 trying to have more transparency about the data that's
20 available, the data that's used in order to really be
21 able to assess what is the utility of this test and is it
22 something that should be recommended or not for those of

1 us that are in the business of developing guidelines for
2 physicians.

3 DR. TEUTSCH: Mara.

4 MS. ASPINALL: So two sets of comments. I
5 actually agree with a lot of what Marc and Jim said but
6 for different reasons.

7 I think that the additional transparency, which
8 we dealt with in Andrea's committee's report last year
9 about the need to continue to show information on each
10 test out there, to me is something that is important to
11 be done.

12 A number of different agencies have done it and
13 in having that, it is not at all related to the patent
14 test, but the ability to have that information available
15 for all testing companies and all tests available in any
16 form makes a huge amount of sense and patents doesn't
17 change that.

18 Secondly, Jim, in your comment about the
19 current system of providing tests for indigent patients
20 is absolutely right. It's an incredibly-cumbersome
21 process, one that is much more difficult for diagnostics.

22 Athena has talked about this a long time ago

1 and I'm familiar with it. It is a process for which
2 you've got four individual steps. You literally need to
3 almost go to getting the patient's tax return and going
4 through a process that's cumbersome to anyone.

5 I think it's unfair to criticize and I know you
6 said it was great that the company's tried to do it, but
7 for any academic or commercial lab to do that, that to me
8 is a key recommendation that should be in the report.
9 Drug companies and therapeutics, it's relatively easy.

10 Now we have some standards about putting out
11 samples and getting their tests out there. By
12 definition, virtually all therapeutics from their
13 beginning until they get generic are single sourced. We
14 have learned how to deal with that system by either
15 requiring or encouraging the drug companies to get
16 samples out to patients to ensure access.

17 Some drug companies have sales forces --

18 DR. EVANS: Are you suggesting that drug
19 samples are a viable way of solving the drug access
20 problem?

21 MS. ASPINALL: No. I think that is the start
22 of the process and it's one way that has dealt with sole

1 sourcing, but the drug companies have a much more
2 straightforward way to be able to get access to patients
3 who cannot otherwise afford it because they are by
4 definition pregenerics sole sourcing.

5 So what I'm suggesting is that we have a
6 process, for which the diagnostic companies have asked
7 for in the past, to say if it's sole sourcing and there
8 is a perception, and in some areas the reality that
9 patients can't get it because of the approval by the
10 payers, that the diagnostic company has the ability to
11 [provide], in a simple and easy way.

12 The company doesn't need to provide a
13 tremendous amount of burdensome administration to get the
14 patient that test on an expedited basis, because I think
15 your assumption that if there were no patents, lots of
16 people would pick up the test is just wrong.

17 DR. EVANS: No. Whoa, whoa.

18 MS. ASPINALL: Nobody else wants it.

19 DR. EVANS: It's empirically the fact, in case
20 after case after case, there are multiple labs performing
21 these tests, hearing loss, hemochromatosis, BRCA1 and 2,
22 SCA, et cetera, et cetera. Only after IP claims are

1 enforced and enacted does one see a narrowing of the
2 field.

3 So, empirically, that's incorrect. We know
4 that multiple labs develop diagnostic tests. That is a
5 fact.

6 MS. ASPINALL: But I think that it happens for
7 a different reason. It happens because the innovator
8 with the patent on most of the occasions --

9 DR. EVANS: Mara, it has nothing to do with the
10 patent.

11 MS. ASPINALL: Well, it's put in the education
12 to do that.

13 DR. EVANS: Oh, Mara.

14 MS. ASPINALL: If you look at the smaller
15 market tests, we looked at the major tests, there are
16 lots of tests out there in smaller markets that nobody
17 has any interest in providing, other than a sole-source.

18 DR. EVANS: And if you talk, for example, to --
19 we got public comments from the individual who runs Gene
20 DX, a rare disease testing --

21 MS. ASPINALL: I read the letter.

22 DR. EVANS: And their point was --

1 MS. ASPINALL: It's on the bottom of the
2 letter.

3 DR. EVANS: -- as soon as the IP associated
4 with the test, we move it to the bottom of the list.
5 Over and over, this occurs.

6 MS. ASPINALL: And I would suggest there are
7 tests that aren't even on their list because the costs of
8 both doing the test and getting to the right physicians
9 aren't even there. We dealt with the ones that are most
10 prominent.

11 DR. EVANS: The idea that marketing is going to
12 solve this through exclusivity, I think, has absolutely
13 no support, and I think we have to be very leery of
14 marketing driving what tests are done.

15 DR. TEUTSCH: Okay. We're going to get into
16 this as we get into the recommendations.

17 Did you have anything else as part of your --

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I'll wait.

19 DR. TEUTSCH: Sheila, last word, a short one.

20 MS. WALCOFF: I have a question for CMS, just
21 to bring things back.

22 If there were no gene patents and no exclusive

1 licenses, would CMS cover every genetic test?

2 MR. ROCHE: There two different parts of the
3 important chain of issues.

4 I'm Jeff Roche. I'm the alternate ex-officio
5 for Dr. Straw.

6 The question of coverage is almost always
7 addressed, and this is based on nearly two years of
8 experience with the agency in that area, on simple facts,
9 like is this a good test, does it measure what it's
10 supposed to measure, does it help actually make a
11 difference for the patient in terms of their outcome, is
12 it something that can be done more cheaply or alternately
13 by a different type of test, is it necessary, and those
14 questions are approached without regard to whether a
15 patent is involved or not involved.

16 Does that answer your question?

17 MS. WALCOFF: I think so. I guess you're
18 saying that whether or not we make any changes at all to
19 the patent structure, that doesn't have any effect on how
20 CMS would elect to reimburse under your current criteria?

21 MR. ROCHE: You've raised a different question.
22 Coverage decisions are made without regards to patents.

1 However, reimbursement decisions are based on
2 how much CMS will pay for a specific testing service,
3 whether it's based on the CPT code or whatever. Those
4 decisions do take into account price levels and a number
5 of different aspects of the cost that goes into the
6 testing, including other costs of doing the business,
7 such as patent licenses and so on.

8 However, that is an area that I don't directly
9 work on at CMS, and I can check with Dr. Straw. Perhaps
10 we can get someone here who can talk about that more
11 knowledgeably.

12 MS. WALCOFF: That would be great because I
13 thought in the report we decided that there wasn't a
14 great difference in pricing because of patents. So if
15 there's not a great difference in pricing that we can
16 identify whether there's a patent or not, that really
17 wouldn't come into play in terms of reimbursement from
18 CMS's perspective. It sounds like.

19 MR. ROCHE: Again, I wouldn't be able to answer
20 that.

21 MS. WALCOFF: I'm happy to corner Barry.

22 DR. TEUTSCH: Mike, thank you for your

1 forbearance as we've wandered far and wide from the
2 comments that you made. We appreciate your
3 clarifications, your input.

4 MR. HENRY: Thank you.

5 DR. TEUTSCH: Clearly, lots to talk about.

6 Our next speaker is Mike Remington, who is with
7 the Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation.

8 Welcome, Michael, and I don't know that we have
9 your written comments. So if you can provide them to us
10 after the meeting, we can have full advantage of your
11 thoughts.

12 MR. REMINGTON: Thank you. Thank you very
13 much.

14 **Michael Remington**

15 **Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation**

16 MR. REMINGTON: My name is Michael Remington.
17 I am a partner in the law firm of Drinker, Biddle, and
18 Reath. Among my other representational responsibilities,
19 I serve as Washington, D.C., counsel for the Wisconsin
20 Alumni Research Foundation and, no, I'm not here to speak
21 about Warfarin.

22 As you know, WARF is a non-profit organization

1 operating under Section 501(c)(3) of the IRS Code, and as
2 a supporting organization of the University of Wisconsin,
3 Madison, WARF was founded in 1925 and is the first
4 organization of its kind to engage in technology transfer
5 associated with a single university.

6 It has been and is today the designated IP
7 management organization for the University of Wisconsin,
8 Madison, under the auspices of the Bayh-Dole Act through
9 its subsidiary WYSIS which stands for Wisconsin System.
10 WARF also represents the interests of the entire
11 University of Wisconsin System.

12 WARF has enjoyed a number of technology
13 transfer successes that have had a significant impact on
14 health, patient cures, safety, and so forth. WARF
15 derives no profit from the licensing of its inventions
16 and recycles all royalties back into further research and
17 innovation.

18 We appreciate the opportunity to present brief
19 oral remarks on the report and we thank you for seeking
20 input of stakeholders, like a representative of a
21 university technology transfer organization to present
22 some input.

1 We would like to specifically associate
2 ourselves with the comprehensive and insightful comments
3 that were previously submitted by the Council on
4 Governmental Relations, COGR, and the Association of
5 American Universities, AAU, which included three
6 principal concerns which hopefully were addressed or are
7 to be addressed in the final report.

8 First, lack of support for the policy options;
9 two, lack of understanding that licensing is a complex
10 process, requiring substantial flexibility; and three,
11 too much focus on regulation without consideration of
12 possible incentives. As I said, hopefully the final
13 report will have taken some steps to cure these three
14 principal concerns.

15 As a personal aside, I spent 13 years as the IP
16 counsel or professor of sorts for the House Judiciary
17 Subcommittee on Intellectual Property under the
18 chairmanships of Peter Rodino and Jack Brooks. Every day
19 in Congress, we had to weigh many of the issues that
20 you're facing.

21 I just want to leave you with a couple thoughts
22 about your policy options. At one point under the

1 tutelage of some respected law professors, we even
2 created a Rule of Civil Procedure with a burden of proof
3 for reform proponents to satisfy. We were receiving so
4 many proposals for reform of patent and trademark and
5 copyright law, we thought we had to higher the bar a
6 little bit and we did so. That reform didn't have a long
7 life, but I would like to leave you with the thought that
8 it's very, very difficult to amend the law and we're
9 seeing this today with omnibus patent law reform.

10 Just a couple cautionary thoughts. I would not
11 have used an economist definition of promoting the
12 progress of science in the useful arts, as I saw in the
13 slide earlier today. There's nothing wrong with that.
14 Intellectual property is an economic proposition. It's
15 an incentive system, but there are other approaches that
16 you could use, like a political utility approach. It's
17 designed to channel certain activities in society for the
18 betterment of the public.

19 The relationship between the courts and the
20 Congress, generally speaking, there's a rule that
21 Congress likes to wait for courts to finally decide cases
22 because with two independent and interconnected branches

1 of government, it's hard to draft legislation when
2 there's ongoing litigation without interceding in that
3 litigation and resolving the disputes that are properly
4 pending in the courts.

5 The three issues that were raised by Tom
6 DeLenge are serious. When Congress interceded to
7 decrease infringement liability, like you're proposing,
8 for the significant societal issue of listening to music
9 in taverns and restaurants, the Irish brought a WTO
10 complaint against the United States and we were found to
11 be in violation of GATT TRIPPS and remember when that
12 happens, the U.S. has to pay a fine or some other segment
13 of our society is punished and in this instance, if
14 you're not WTO-compliant, some patients group or some
15 other area of the medical sector could be punished by our
16 allies.

17 Besides, we don't like to violate international
18 treaties. We often lecture the rest of the world about
19 respecting treaties.

20 The evidence of patent thickets appears to be
21 fairly meager, and I would point out to you that there
22 has been a great increase of significant activities in

1 the Department of Justice and the Federal Trade
2 Commission, with business review letters being
3 forthcoming in various standard-setting organizations and
4 information technology areas. There is no reason why
5 that wouldn't be approved for genetic research.

6 The enormous successes of the Bayh-Dole Act
7 were given short shrift, and many patient cures have come
8 out of that successful statute. So was collective
9 licensing.

10 I'm not saying that you can get to collective
11 licensing overnight in genetic research, but I'm counsel
12 to a performing rights organization that licenses several
13 million works in a blanket license for music at
14 universities and in other activities throughout the
15 country for, I might add, a very low price. So that's
16 how you get to listen to your music at football games and
17 in student unions.

18 These are just a few cautionary notes. You are
19 indeed sitting on a shifting landscape of law, politics,
20 and science, and thank you very much for hearing these
21 remarks.

22 DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you very much, Mike. Any

1 questions or comments for Mike? Yes?

2 DR. ROYAL: We keep hearing about how this
3 violates a treaty.

4 Now, there's no provision in the TRIPPS
5 Agreement for Irish bars, but there actually are
6 provisions in the TRIPPS Agreement for health. So could
7 you explain in a little more detail how this would
8 violate a treaty?

9 MR. REMINGTON: I was worried that a professor
10 might ask me a question. I'm raising it as a flag for
11 your consideration. There are health exceptions in our
12 treaties and I'm not saying it's violative. I'm saying
13 that we unwittingly and unknowingly violated the WTO
14 through the enactment of --

15 DR. ROYAL: I don't know about that.

16 MR. REMINGTON: -- the law that went all the
17 way through and we still haven't cured it. Twelve years
18 has gone by without a cure by the U.S.

19 If you have considered this issue internally in
20 great depth, I would defer to your consideration. I was
21 just raising the red flag or, let's say, the yellow
22 intersection, proceed slowly on this point.

1 Thank you. Yes?

2 DR. WILLIAMS: Even though your bar-setting
3 review in your previous job has fallen by the wayside, I
4 was curious if you had applied that to this document.
5 And, if you were to look at that from the perspective of,
6 did we hit the level of scrutiny that we needed to before
7 patent reform would be considered, are we well short of
8 that; have we met the threshold; are we above it? Do you
9 have a sense?

10 MR. REMINGTON: Well, let me just talk a little
11 bit about the standard. In order to elevate something to
12 a policy matter for the Congress, you have to rise to a
13 significant issue affecting society that is appropriate
14 of policy-makers' consideration and, as you know, we have
15 a bi-camera legislature and two political parties in each
16 branch, so it's very, very difficult to get something
17 through. Their first question is, is this is a big
18 issue. So you have to answer that question for
19 yourselves.

20 The second thing you have to ask is, are you
21 proposing the solution that is the best solution for the
22 policy question at hand.

1 The third issue is, does it create what we call
2 the law of unintended consequences. For example, if you
3 use the patient health issue as your standard, or the
4 inability of indigent people to pay for these medical
5 tests, then you have to ask yourself the question about
6 what will happen when some other parallel area of
7 medicine comes forward that sits similarly, because
8 people will say, if this passes we should do it for this
9 other area.

10 We call that the fallacy of analogy. This is
11 the way lawyers think, and it's not necessarily a good
12 thing, I might add. Hopefully, there are many non-
13 lawyers at the table, but lawyers argue by analogy. So
14 once you create an analogy, they will argue by further
15 analogy, and they will use AIDS research, embryonic stem
16 cell [research] to make a similar argument. They will
17 say, one, we should not have exclusive licensing in those
18 areas; two, we should lower prices or not grant patents,
19 accept infringement liability.

20 So those are questions for you to answer. I am
21 merely suggesting that Congress will ask those questions,
22 whether it has a test or not.

1 DR. TEUTSCH: Last comment. Paul.

2 DR. BILLINGS: This is not an analogy question
3 but a question of fact.

4 What has been the value of the Warfarin patent
5 to your foundation?

6 MR. REMINGTON: I would have to get that. I'm
7 not in-house at WARF. It is one of the more valuable
8 patents in WARF's purview.

9 DR. BILLINGS: Can you give me a ballpark?

10 MR. REMINGTON: No, I can't.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Paul, at least in a publication
12 to say that Wisconsin has actually gotten more from this
13 patent than any other single institution has gotten from
14 any other patent by a long shot.

15 DR. BILLINGS: Yes. That's my impression.

16 MR. REMINGTON: No, no, no.

17 DR. BILLINGS: It has derived an enormous
18 amount of support.

19 MR. REMINGTON: No. WARF's most valuable
20 patent has been Vitamin D derivatives invented by Hector
21 DiLuca, by far, and it's most successful patent was
22 probably the cure for Ricketts, which was invented in

1 1925. WARF was told by the Attorney General that it --
2 well, WARF didn't exist at the time -- the university was
3 told that it couldn't even market it because that would
4 be violative of the state constitution. A university
5 can't get into marketing. So the foundation was created
6 and Ricketts was cured in eight years.

7 I do have a question about the debate about
8 Warfarin, because we call the sequel to Warfarin
9 Coumadin, and it's a separate product.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Well, thank you.

11 MR. REMINGTON: Thank you.

12 DR. TEUTSCH: Thanks for your comments. We
13 really appreciate it.

14 **Gene Patents and Licensing Practices**

15 **Discussion of Final Draft Recommendations**

16 DR. TEUTSCH: I think everybody has now got a
17 clear sense of the diversity of perspectives on these
18 issues. If you haven't, you had too heavy a lunch.

19 In addition, one of the ad hoc members provided
20 some additional comments. These comments were also
21 provided during the deliberations of the Task Force.
22 They were sent this morning, so they're provided to you

1 now.

2 MS. ASPINALL: That's what I wanted to ask. Is
3 Brian here?

4 DR. TEUTSCH: No, he's not here.

5 MS. ASPINALL: Is he going to talk through
6 these comments?

7 DR. TEUTSCH: No, and they were expressed
8 before. The Task Force has considered them. So most of
9 the folks who have been on the Task Force had an
10 opportunity. What we have here is not a unanimous
11 document but one that best represents the --

12 DR. EVANS: What was your first clue?

13 DR. TEUTSCH: Anyway, with that, I'm going to
14 turn the opportunity back to Dr. Evans, who will help
15 walk us through this.

16 DR. EVANS: Thanks a lot.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: I don't know, Jim. Did you want
18 to spend a few minutes on the issues?

19 DR. EVANS: Yes. I think that we have a goal
20 here that by the end of the day we'll get through the
21 recommendations. I do think, given the degree of dissent
22 and given the kind of explosive nature of this issue,

1 that it's only fair if we spend, say, half an hour so
2 people can vent, and then we'll tackle the
3 recommendations.

4 I do get some prerogatives as the Task Force
5 chair. So what I'm going to do is just spend a couple of
6 minutes. If you can turn the slides on. I do want to
7 mention the Task Force composition and how we came about
8 things.

9 Of the people who were really deciding policy
10 and the content of the Task Force, these are the members
11 and the ad hoc experts. The agency experts, consultants
12 were extraordinarily valuable, but they are consultants,
13 basically, and here to lend points of fact and
14 information.

15 Although Mara was not able to participate
16 extensively in the process, I think Mara is the
17 dissenting voice of the five members within the full
18 members who are on the Task Force.

19 Of the ad hoc experts, I think it's fair to say
20 that it's basically Brian Stanton who is the dissenting
21 member of the ad hoc experts, as you can see from the
22 document that he wishes to have circulated around.

1 So I tell you that not to single out any
2 particular individual. It's great to have -- no, it's
3 good to have dissent, and dissent shaped our conclusions
4 in a very good way, but I do want to emphasize that this
5 was not a split decision; this was not a close call, as
6 we went through this.

7 Maybe it will turn out to be a close call in
8 the Committee, or maybe what the majority of us favored
9 won't carry in the Committee, but I do want you to
10 understand that, that this was not a few people who
11 rammed through a sketchy or minority position.

12 What I want to do to open up the discussion is
13 I just want to frame briefly, again, the rationale for
14 our recommendations. We have heard a lot about some
15 claims. Those claims include, Number 1, that our
16 original charge had nothing to do with looking at
17 benefits. That is absolutely not the case. We were
18 charged with looking at both harms and benefits of the
19 patent and licensing process on patient access to quality
20 genetic tests. It's not only, I think, illogical to
21 ignore benefits but it would have been contrary to our
22 charge.

1 I think that, Number 2, we did find harm as
2 opposed to the statement that is selectively quoting,
3 saying that we did not find widespread and pervasive
4 harm. The next sentence states: "However, there was harm
5 found in segments of the population." When I see members
6 of the population who clearly, because of patent-enabled
7 exclusivity, are unable to get genetic tests, that's
8 meaningful to me as a medical provider.

9 Number 3. The issue that perhaps struck me
10 most forcefully, and I think several on the Task Force
11 most forcefully, was the almost non-existent evidence for
12 the need for patents in the development of genetic
13 diagnostic tests.

14 Over and over again, in every example you can
15 give, whether it's BRCA testing, whether it's HFE testing
16 for hemochromatosis, whether it's hearing loss, many labs
17 quickly began offering tests, and then the field was shut
18 down or narrowed dramatically when IP was invoked. The
19 combination of harm, along with the very difficult
20 ability to show benefit, I think, is a highly persuasive
21 set of facts.

22 I want to just mention that we consider our

1 recommendations to not be dramatic. I think they are
2 narrowly tailored. We should not conflate therapeutics
3 with diagnostics. The scope of our charge was to look at
4 diagnostics. That's what we did.

5 Our recommendations are attempting to tease out
6 the ability of laboratories to perform diagnostic tests
7 without fear of infringement, and [they] do not alter, do
8 not touch the therapeutic realm. This was for two
9 reasons.

10 One was that it was not part of our charge.
11 The second is that you can make very strong arguments
12 that patents are doing heavy lifting. They're doing work
13 in the realm of therapeutics with dramatic upfront costs,
14 et cetera, et cetera.

15 It's extraordinarily difficult to make that
16 claim for diagnostics and thus I would emphasize that
17 these proposed recommendations are narrow in their scope.

18 They look at trying to tease apart diagnostic testing
19 for healthcare-related activities, and I would also just
20 point out that we cannot forget the issue of harm when it
21 comes to quality of testing.

22 The patent-enabled sole-source provider is a

1 serious threat to quality, given the infrastructure of
2 quality control for laboratory tests in this country. So
3 I've gotten on my soapbox, and why don't we just turn it
4 over for about a half an hour and then we'll get to the
5 recommendations and I really am going to keep it to a
6 half hour. I'm writing down that it's 2:23.

7 Muin and Sylvia.

8 DR. KHOURY: So here is the first question,
9 Jim, for you.

10 We are opening up Pandora's box on diagnostics
11 versus therapeutics, and I for one have never really
12 believed in genetic exceptionalism, especially in the new
13 era of biomarkers, et cetera.

14 So using the laws of analogy, as our WARF
15 speaker talked about just before, could you envision the
16 impact of making recommendations on other non-genetic
17 areas of diagnostics? Maybe you can say we don't care,
18 that's not our charge, but I just want us to work through
19 the system.

20 I mean, I sympathize with a lot of the ideas
21 presented today, but I just want to explore those
22 implications outside the so-called genetic arena.

1 DR. EVANS: Maybe you can start me off, because
2 I certainly have been focused on genetic diagnostics, so
3 I'm not sure where to go with that.

4 DR. KHOURY: If those recommendations are read
5 without the genetic lens. Just read them as a biomarker
6 or an assay, or anything, for the purpose of diagnosing,
7 predicting whatever, I mean think about that genetically.

8 DR. EVANS: Right. I think that, in a way, the
9 reason you can't do that is because it may well be that
10 other diagnostic endeavors are very different in the
11 sense of upfront costs, et cetera. It may be that the
12 development of monoclonal antibodies that are effective
13 for immunohistochemistry is just a whole other animal.

14 I'm not trying to avoid your question. I guess
15 what I'm trying to do is say that I'm leery that it's
16 relevant, in the sense that we're focused on genetics
17 here where the landscape is we've got a handle on it.

18 DR. KHOURY: So maybe I can help you out.
19 Within your three types, you gave different subgroups of
20 patents, et cetera. One is the association types, the
21 other is the assays, et cetera.

22 Which ones of these are the easiest to deal

1 with, and which ones are the most difficult? I mean, I'm
2 fast-forwarding to a time where genetic sequences will be
3 cheap. Everyone will have access to them. I can see
4 some of the hiccupping along the road, but if somebody,
5 let's say, comes up with an amazing new technology that
6 would single-handedly do three billion base pair, using
7 an amazing new discovery, plus all the gene expression
8 and epigenetics, in one big swoop, do we want to reward
9 that invention or what?

10 DR. EVANS: I think that's a very important
11 point, and one of the things I would, again, reiterate is
12 that the narrowness of these recommendations are such
13 that the last thing they would do is interfere with the
14 patenting of a technique, and that's a very important
15 point.

16 We are not looking to do anything to undermine
17 the patenting of the next PCR, for example. That
18 absolutely should be patentable. We're talking about a
19 very narrow situation which the analysis of a DNA
20 sequence. That's what this basically all boils down to,
21 and I think that what you say about cost is absolutely
22 right.

1 The cost of DNA sequencing and its decline
2 makes Moore's law look like a piker. It's going to be
3 very cheap, and I think that substantially informs what
4 we're talking about.

5 With regard to what kind of claims are most
6 difficult to get around, I think it's clear it's
7 association claims, all right because association claims
8 are utterly agnostic to the issue of how you analyze
9 this, et cetera. They simply say that if you have this
10 sequence, we have the patent on thinking about and I'm
11 not using hyperbole there. In fact, Claim 13 of the
12 homocysteine patent with metabolite actually talks about
13 thinking.

14 Association patents patent associating,
15 thinking about the genotype/phenotype relationship. So
16 they're the hardest to get around and one could see
17 problems in other diagnostic realms for such
18 associations.

19 Sylvia.

20 MS. MANN: I'm not going to vent, Jim. I just
21 wanted to talk a little bit about -- to answer Sheila's
22 question.

1 Most of the Medicaid coverage and reimbursement
2 for genetic testing is done at the state level. Very few
3 national coverage decisions are made on things like that
4 and so having helped state Medicaid make decisions in our
5 region on the West Coast, one of the things that makes it
6 easier is if there is a reference lab that actually does
7 multiple genetic tests for us because we don't want to
8 negotiate 50 contracts. We're not going to negotiate 50
9 contracts.

10 So anything that restricts access to testing to
11 sole-source providers or labs that are far away or labs
12 that are inaccessible, there is going to be less and less
13 chance that we're going to actually contract with that
14 lab, unless it's a really bad public health problem in
15 our state. Then we would, because we would have to
16 because so many people have the disease or we had to test
17 for the disease, but otherwise we're going to go with the
18 lab with the biggest bang that we can get the contract
19 for.

20 MS. WALCOFF: Right. So putting just the
21 general market issues of that aside, if I think this
22 committee thinks that this is such an important issue in

1 terms of the patient access for genetic tests that are
2 coming from sole-source labs, and not knowing the
3 universe of sole-source labs with exclusive licensing
4 agreements, wouldn't it be a more straightforward fix to
5 carve out an exception or make a requirement for state
6 Medicaid to contract with the sole-source labs in this
7 case of genetic testing, so that there is access for
8 those populations, rather than leaving it up to each
9 individual state, really trying to drive the competitive
10 market between reference labs and the sole-source lab?

11 I mean, I just think we should not get into
12 that. I am thinking, how can we do this from an HHS
13 perspective. As you know, I'm know the fly in the
14 ointment with this, but I want to challenge the group to
15 really rethink how we structure these recommendations
16 into something that the Secretary can receive and
17 actually take action on, and that's one idea.

18 I was trying to see if that might be something
19 possible, not knowing how a state Medicaid really works,
20 but I feel that we are not going to be able to get to the
21 solution and answer that we want to through the way these
22 are structured because of the simple limitations of the

1 Secretary's authority.

2 MS. MANN: I think that it's going to be talked
3 both ways because if it's going to take legislation
4 reform, either way. I mean whichever one gets through
5 first.

6 MS. WALCOFF: If it's going to take
7 legislation, couldn't we do it administratively, too?

8 MS. MANN: I don't know.

9 MS. WALCOFF: As CMS, can you administratively
10 make requirements like that in terms of state Medicaid
11 policy?

12 DR. EVANS: No.

13 MS. WALCOFF: Can Jeff answer?

14 MR. ROCHE: I'm sorry. The question again was
15 can CMS impose what on state Medicaid?

16 MS. WALCOFF: What sort of authority does CMS
17 have to make administrative non-statutory -- under your
18 current statutory authority, make administrative
19 requirements on state Medicaid agencies?

20 MR. ROCHE: Again, I can go back and see if we
21 can find more information that will help explore that
22 question, but I'm not able to answer that now.

1 DR. EVANS: So I would love it if there was an
2 easy way to ask the Secretary just sign off on this, do
3 such and such and solve the problems.

4 MS. WALCOFF: I don't know that we can get to
5 that ever, but I think it would be --

6 DR. EVANS: I don't think that's the case, and
7 I think that even if the answer --

8 MS. WALCOFF: -- good to give her something
9 that she can take the next step on.

10 DR. EVANS: -- had been yep, no problem with
11 that, the problem is that it only addresses a small part
12 of the problem. All right. It doesn't address, for
13 example, the quality issues which are real and
14 problematic when you have sole-source labs.

15 It also doesn't address the future issues
16 which, granted, are future and therefore we don't know
17 for sure, but I guess what I'm getting at is that I don't
18 think there is a simple, easy fix for the problems that
19 we've identified and if we can do it, granted, in a
20 roundabout way, right, because --

21 MS. WALCOFF: I'm not suggesting simply a
22 simple, easy fix, or even a roundabout way. I mean, if

1 you want to look at quality, I would look to FDA and CMS
2 in terms of it's their responsibility in managing
3 quality, because they have the authority to do that.

4 DR. EVANS: That was my initial thought.

5 Actually, they don't in this sense, not in a
6 practical sense. When I started this process, my view
7 was quality. That's an oversight issue. That's an
8 issue, let's leave it to the FDA, et cetera. The problem
9 is that in practical terms, one cannot ensure quality
10 with laboratory tests unless there are multiple providers
11 in any kind of optimal way.

12 So the FDA could say, from now until the cows
13 come home, that there should be stringent requirements,
14 but without the ability to do proficiency testing,
15 without the ability of having several labs, you
16 compromise quality, and I think Andrea would confirm
17 that.

18 DR. BILLINGS: Jim, what is the quality of the
19 evidence for that last statement?

20 DR. EVANS: I think it is that the entire
21 infrastructure of quality control rests on proficiency
22 testing.

1 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There are many
2 different factors to this issue.

3 DR. BILLINGS: Just one follow-on and then I'll
4 yield to Andrea. Okay. So I will accept the fact that
5 proficiency testing is important and maybe the most
6 important factor in quality, but then you're also making
7 the claim that sole-source labs don't do proficiency
8 testing as well as multisource labs.

9 What's the evidence for that?

10 DR. EVANS: Well, because you simply can't do
11 proficiency testing for sole-source labs.

12 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Well, there are
13 different kinds of proficiency testing that you can do.
14 You can do simple exchange with other laboratories in the
15 testing.

16 Having done this testing for over 18 years now,
17 what I have learned doing this testing is that when you
18 have more laboratories addressing the same testing, you
19 can learn a lot more faster and you can identify the
20 issues when you're testing, not only by exchanging
21 specimens between laboratories but then you try to
22 address what the different results are you obtain, but

1 also because you're comparing results from different
2 types of assays that might pick up the answers that you
3 would not be aware of you're testing because you are the
4 only sole provider of that testing.

5 But if you are the only sole provider of that
6 testing and you're re-running your own specimens, then
7 you wouldn't be picking up some of these issues. So
8 there's more to learning on the process by comparing
9 results with other laboratories and we have actually data
10 from the College of American Pathologists and the
11 Molecular Oncology Proficiency Testing Program that, as
12 we've gone over the years, by comparing results from
13 different methodologies from different laboratories, that
14 we have learned about the disorders and the testing and
15 significantly continued to improve this and that's by
16 collaborating with other institutions, other places that
17 are actually doing the tests.

18 DR. BILLINGS: I'm sure that that's true, but I
19 would also suggest that it's probably true that for a lab
20 that does, let's say, DNA sequencing tests of a breast
21 cancer gene, that they are constantly looking both at the
22 quality of their results for any number of issues and

1 looking at methods to improve the throughput, the costs,
2 the kinds of data that they're generating again for their
3 own reasons.

4 My question was, where are you getting the
5 evidence that there's a big quality difference? I think
6 Andrea's comments are part of that evidence, and is that
7 Type 1 evidence? Is it Type 4 evidence? You're an
8 evidence-based medicine guy. Give me some quality of the
9 basis on which you make this conclusion.

10 DR. EVANS: Well, for example, you can't do
11 that test when you have a sole-source provider because
12 nobody else can do the test. All right. You can't
13 compare the results which is a necessary factor in trying
14 to figure out the accuracy, the precision, et cetera.
15 So it's simply undoable.

16 It is basically axiomatic that quality is more
17 easily obtainable when you have several labs that are
18 doing the test. Now, there may be times when there
19 happens to be only one lab and you have to just live with
20 that and you have to rely on those other processes.

21 I guess my question would be, as an obvious
22 advocate for one position, why should we hog-tie

1 ourselves into that position when what we can do is have
2 a thriving competition between labs to provide quality
3 testing, innovations, et cetera, with lack of sole
4 source?

5 MS. WALCOFF: I want to just respond to that,
6 and I'm hoping that we're not suggesting that sole-source
7 labs at this point in time because they can't do that
8 particular type of proficiency testing are somehow
9 providing a test that is of lesser or inadequate quality.

10 DR. EVANS: The quality is, unfortunately, not
11 as good as you would have in a situation where there was
12 --

13 DR. WILLIAMS: I'm not sure we can say it's not
14 as good. We certainly don't know, we don't have any
15 independent ability to verify and that is a very
16 different issue. I think it's very dangerous for us to
17 make pronouncements about the fact that the quality is
18 good or not good.

19 I mean, personally, I think that Paul is mostly
20 right in the sense that it is in their best interests to
21 try and do the highest-quality testing that can be done.
22 However, as someone that has to look -- is on the

1 outside looking in, I would much rather be able to look
2 at data to say -- and that is something that's addressed
3 within the document. It comes back to the transparency
4 issue.

5 I'll also just note parenthetically, and then
6 if you'll allow me, I'll go into my other comments, --

7 MS. WALCOFF: You guys interrupted me.
8 Actually, that wasn't my point. Can I just say one quick
9 thing and then let you go on and on? Not that you go on
10 and on. I'm sorry.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: I'll accept one on.

12 MS. WALCOFF: Okay. Just go on. But I was
13 going to get back to my challenge again of sort of
14 relooking at this because as I would receive these, just
15 hearing sort of all of these arguments and assuming that
16 I just accept them, if I am the Secretary and this
17 advisory committee is suggesting to me that I should go
18 to the President because, of course, if we're going to be
19 changing laws at the recommendations of the federal
20 government, it doesn't come through one agency or
21 department or another, it comes through the
22 Administration as a whole which is the White House.

1 So if I go to my boss which is the President
2 and say, Mr. President, we have an issue here, we have an
3 access issue, sometimes the states don't want to contract
4 with these sole-source labs, they find it cumbersome,
5 expensive, whatever the case may be, some people have
6 suggested there are proficiency testing issues related to
7 quality with some of these labs, I would like you to
8 propose that we change the intellectual property laws.

9 I would have to say, having been in some
10 meetings that are not exactly like that but somewhat like
11 that, there would be a lot of challenges made to that. So
12 you're looking at a huge, huge hurdle changing laws at
13 all, but changing these laws, and I think that some of
14 the challenges you would get back are, so you're telling
15 me our agencies, these amazing agencies, FDA, CMS, can't
16 figure out different ways other than comparison testing
17 to improve quality? You're saying that we can't figure
18 out another way to get these people that cannot afford to
19 pay for these tests?

20 DR. EVANS: And what I would say to that is
21 that, Number 1, absolutely. We're not asking for things
22 that are easy to do. I wish there were some things that

1 were easy to do that would fix the problems and take care
2 of these issues.

3 It was the general feeling of the Task Force,
4 it's my feeling, that targeted changes that are statutory
5 are the best way of dealing with those problems as well
6 as the evidence that is there that we've gone over that
7 we don't really need the patent protection for the
8 development of these genetic tests.

9 I think the other thing that I would just touch
10 on is that there is considerable feeling in the community
11 and in the country that perhaps we've gone too far with
12 some of the patent protection for genes in general. You
13 heard that today from two of the public commenters.

14 So I don't think that suggesting statutory
15 change is necessarily a crazy idea just because it's
16 hard.

17 MS. WALCOFF: No, and I wouldn't say those
18 other suggestions are easy, but I guess my point is to be
19 more realistic because I think that whether we like it or
20 not, it's a nation of lawyers.

21 DR. EVANS: Right.

22 MS. WALCOFF: What lawyers will do is exactly

1 what the gentleman proposed earlier. What are all these
2 unintended consequences? What can we analogize to this?

3 I would suggest that this is not just a hard ask, it is
4 a very, very, very high hurdle, and wouldn't it be more
5 effective, wouldn't we -- rather than causing years of
6 debate which has already been happening over patent and
7 trademark and intellectual property issues, wouldn't we
8 be better served as this committee to find our target
9 again and direct things that are within the immediate
10 authority of the Department of Health and Human Services?

11 DR. EVANS: That's exactly why what we have
12 done is divide our recommendations into, basically, two
13 levels, two tiers. The first is -- okay, these are hard
14 -- we think that these are best, at least the Task Force
15 as a whole thinks that these are best, but we understand,
16 as we'll get to with the slide when we get to
17 recommendations, that these may not happen. They're very
18 hard.

19 There are issues that you may not even decide
20 to pursue because of things like unintended consequences,
21 and therefore, here are a set of other recommendations
22 where we think we could at least address, to some extent,

1 these issues. So we are taking that approach to an
2 extent.

3 MS. WALCOFF: I obviously have serious problems
4 with that and challenges, but at the very least, if those
5 are the first things I read, I may not get to 2, 3, 4, 5,
6 6, 7, and 8. I would probably say, oh, well, this is
7 going to be quite a challenge and what's wrong? I would
8 be calling my agency and saying what's going on here?

9 DR. EVANS: I'm sorry, I think you should read
10 the entire page or two.

11 MS. WALCOFF: I did, I did. I'm saying the
12 person receiving this report may not.

13 DR. EVANS: I think we can rely on the
14 Secretary of HHS to do due diligence and look at the
15 recommendations. I think I have a little more faith than
16 you do.

17

18 MS. WALCOFF: I'm not suggesting that she would
19 not.

20 MS. WALCOFF: Number 1, I would start with
21 talking to my agencies and doing that exact due
22 diligence, and finding out exactly what the problem is.

1 It sounds like there are still some open questions from
2 the agencies. We want their support. We want, when the
3 Secretary goes to do that due diligence on these first
4 primary recommendations that the others support, to get
5 that.

6 DR. EVANS: I think she will get through the
7 one or two pages.

8 MS. WALCOFF: But my point is, I hope that in
9 terms of doing her due diligence with the agencies, that
10 those questions we have answers to, and that we know what
11 they're going to say and we know that this is helpful to
12 them.

13 DR. EVANS: Maybe there are modifications and
14 wording suggestions that you can make that will help
15 ensure that the Secretary gets to those issues if we do
16 decide to keep the general structure intact.

17 So Marc, and then Mara.

18 DR. WILLIAMS: I'm going on. So I'm going to
19 move off this area and just highlight a couple things
20 that I reflected on as we heard the public comments in
21 relation to the document.

22 The first is, I wanted to remind the group that

1 in the charter of our committee, one of the specific,
2 explicit tasks that we're asked to address relates to
3 disparity. So, in some ways that elevates the potential
4 for harm in the Medicaid population a little bit higher,
5 because I think we are specifically asked to look for
6 where there are potential health disparities within our
7 charter.

8 The second comment relates to the example that
9 was raised by one of the commenters about Herteneu, which
10 I think is a really interesting example for a couple of
11 different reasons. It illustrates several of the points.

12 I think it's very clear that this has been
13 hugely important. It is directly related to the
14 appropriate use of a therapeutic. I think it is also
15 fair to say that where we're really going to see
16 expansion in the next couple of years, relating to, if
17 you will, personalized medicine, relates to the use of
18 tumor markers to characterize and direct chemotherapy.

19 This raises a potential issue relating to some
20 of the points that are made in the document, because if
21 some of these tumor markers end up being sole sourced,
22 there are some pragmatic issues that will have to be

1 addressed.

2 One is, is that it's hard to get enough tumor
3 to run the markers that we currently have, and if we have
4 to somehow divvy it up and send it to five different
5 laboratories, that would be, I think, extraordinarily
6 problematic.

7 I think we also found that within Her-2, it was
8 only through the collaboration of a lot of different
9 laboratories that we identified some of the very
10 significant quality concerns relating to how to do Her-2
11 testing.

12 So that obviously falls into the realm of a
13 potential harm, but I think it is an issue, and I know
14 that we're struggling right now in terms of do we have
15 adequate amounts of tissue to do what really is medically
16 appropriate to do using a provider that can provide all
17 the tests.

18 The third thing is relating to the patent
19 thickets. I do think that this is a real potential
20 problem. I think we do have evidence that laboratorians
21 are now in a position of not being able to report
22 medically-significant results because of the concerns

1 about infringing on other patents and in the long run
2 that is harmful to patient care, but I think we also have
3 to think about, if we're going to go in this direction
4 and I certainly would favor trying to explore solutions
5 in this area, then we have to understand how we can
6 incent companies that don't have right now any incentive
7 to really participate, I think for good reason, how can
8 we incent that participation so we can really move
9 through this area, and I think I heard that reflected in
10 a couple of the industry representatives, that there has
11 to be that type of incentive put forward.

12 Lastly, and this just relates to the support
13 for the report, I am not as sanguine about this from the
14 perspective that I think in many ways this is analogous
15 to what we see coming out of committees in the Congress,
16 that you can say what we had overwhelming support, but it
17 was divided on party lines, and if you kind of look at
18 the composition, I think in some ways, and I'm not saying
19 that we should have tried to have equal representation,
20 that's not what we do, but I am concerned that
21 overwhelming support should not be overly-emphasized,
22 given that there may well have been less representation

1 from people that had more direct interest in patenting.

2 And the last thing about the composition which
3 I think relates to your question, there were a number of
4 Department of Health and Human Services ex-officios that
5 participated in this which I would hope would have raised
6 some of the issues that you were raising about is this
7 something that we could do, and I would be very
8 interested, at least in some course of the debate, to
9 know where the level of support for the recommendations
10 that would involve some of the very difficult problems.

11 DR. EVANS: So what I think we ought to do is
12 we can extend it a little beyond half an hour, at 3:00,
13 we are scheduled to have a break anyway. Let's come back
14 from the break after we're done and then tackle the
15 recommendation issues.

16 Mara.

17 MS. ASPINALL: Okay. Well, as the not singled-
18 out/singled-out dissenter here in person, I'll take a
19 little bit of prerogative.

20 DR. EVANS: I figured you'd singled yourself
21 out.

22 MS. ASPINALL: And I've said a lot to this

1 committee not just here but to the broader committee but
2 on previous times we've talked about it. So I have
3 several comments, but I will try to get them done before
4 3:00.

5 First, I want to say how much I respected the
6 committee and the process we went through and
7 particularly, Jim, your leadership, your commitment and
8 your persistence. We didn't often or always agree on
9 things, but your attempts to ensure that I stayed with
10 it, stayed with the committee, and heard my comments,
11 Brian's, and occasionally others that had dissenting
12 views is very much, I need to say that to the whole
13 committee, acknowledged.

14 So while you say it wasn't rammed down anyone's
15 throat, and I would have been the throat there, there was
16 not agreement but the process was well done and we took
17 the extra time from two or three meetings ago where I
18 felt very strongly that we needed some more time, as did
19 others, to get public comment, and I would like to
20 publicly acknowledge that and your leadership --

21 DR. EVANS: Thanks.

22 MS. ASPINALL: -- in doing that. But now.

1 DR. EVANS: But.

2 MS. ASPINALL: That's right. But that was an
3 important process step and it's great actually on a day
4 like this to even twice now agree with Marc.

5 First, I'm going to start with the charter
6 issue and I wasn't planning on actually going here, but I
7 think the comment that I have to make is on the comments
8 today about quality.

9 First of all, if we're going to debate the
10 charter, the charter was on access and disparities. It
11 had nothing to do with quality, and you could argue
12 that's a piece of it and I won't go through what the
13 single source labs do which they do on both proficiency
14 and additional time with CAP inspectors because of that
15 exact sensitivity that the labs themselves had, but I
16 have to say that I'm extremely uncomfortable with saying
17 by definition they're less good quality because there are
18 plenty of great labs out there and I'm sure there are
19 plenty of lousy labs out there. But by definition, I
20 can't let that stand. I just have to comment on it.

21 Secondly, in the charter and you spoke today
22 and in the past because I've spoken about the commentary

1 between diagnostics and therapeutics, if indeed, as it is
2 in the charter, that it's only about diagnostics, I think
3 one of the issues that you summarized today should not
4 compare the development costs and you called it
5 sufficiently low for diagnostics versus therapeutics.

6 If what we're talking about is diagnostics, the
7 comparison of what it takes is not relevant and even more
8 relevant, although I would say, as a diagnostic
9 developer, it's not particularly low and it continues to
10 increase, regardless of the patents, just because the
11 burden of proof is and continues to increase, is that we
12 cannot look at it by the amount of dollars that goes in
13 because the reimbursement rates, as we've talked much in
14 this committee, patents or not, unless you have exception
15 pricing, you don't get any premium for patents, as we
16 talked about, is about economic viability. It's not
17 about that it costs \$10 to create a test, a thousand
18 dollars or \$10,000.

19 So I think in the summary that is not an
20 accurate depiction of what the issues are, regardless of
21 either because of a comparison or it's not about upfront
22 costs, it's about the full cost of educating, running,

1 and selling the test. Those are the two comments on
2 charter.

3 Next, as we look at the summary comments and
4 probably the thing that I'm most disturbed about today
5 and read all the public comments and in detail, I have my
6 10, as the rest of the committee did, I don't think that
7 we have adequately represented the comments from some of
8 the largest academic institutions in the country who
9 supported the idea of access, supported the idea that we
10 need to deal with disparities, but did comment that the
11 committee's recommendations go too far and solve a
12 problem that, even at the academic centers and some of
13 these were representing technology transfer offices and
14 some of them were representing the university management
15 in the broadest sense, are saying that the committee's
16 recommendations, while there are pieces of it that make
17 sense, go too far.

18 And I think, again in a summary comment, that
19 needs to be represented and that the comments that you
20 had in here are obviously accurate, but I think more
21 commentary on what the other piece was, not just from
22 industry, is important.

1 Next, composition of the committee, and as Marc
2 said, the composition of the committee, as I look at it
3 now, I'm wondering why I didn't see that earlier, but,
4 indeed, it's not fair for any one person to represent
5 fully an industry because this is a diverse industry that
6 is not monothematic. So I don't believe that all of
7 industry feels one way and all of academia doesn't, but I
8 think it is important to -- and I actually don't even
9 know where Brian's institution is, but that to be fair,
10 we probably did need more representatives from non-
11 academic laboratories and that's why I acknowledge again
12 that it wasn't just that academic universities and others
13 felt one way. They're not monolithic entities any more
14 than industry is a monolithic entity.

15 Next, and then just right before my last point,
16 I will go back to the reimbursement point, and Sheila
17 brought up a couple of issues today about it, I think the
18 report needs to also acknowledge the process that needs
19 to be eased, patented or not, but as we're talking about
20 patents and as one of the key findings of the group is
21 that patents create sole access.

22 Sole access creates access problems which is

1 the way I saw the three steps here, that one of the
2 things that HHS and other agencies can do more readily
3 than some of these other recommendations is make a
4 process for access when companies and laboratories want
5 to be able to give the test to people who need it and
6 can't afford it, whether they have insurance or not, make
7 it a transparent easy process, so we can, regardless of
8 the bigger issues and changing the world there and that
9 may or may not happen, we can begin to get access to
10 patients which to me is the broader issue that this
11 committee is about.

12 So, in summary, having those five points, I
13 believe that the purpose of the patent system was done to
14 create innovation in a time-delimited way and having that
15 time-delimitation is the piece that provides the checks
16 and balances that both allows innovation and then allows
17 others to come in at the appropriate time.

18 Thank you.

19 DR. EVANS: Let's see. I believe that Liz had
20 a comment and then Andrea and then we really have to
21 break. Liz, Rochelle, and Andrea. All right.

22 DR. MANSFIELD: So I obviously work for HHS.

1 So I don't have an opinion on whether you're right or
2 wrong, but I just wanted to bring up a couple points that
3 I didn't hear necessarily addressed, although some of
4 them overlap with what Marc and Mara just said.

5 I didn't see any traditional diagnostic
6 industry input, I mean, on the committee for the report.

7 Did I miss that or was it primarily laboratory-based?

8 DR. EVANS: I think it was laboratory-based. I
9 would add that with regard to the representation, I think
10 I would echo what Mara said, that to divide it kind of
11 artificially between academic and industry is probably
12 not the best thing.

13 DR. MANSFIELD: I agree.

14 DR. EVANS: I think if you look here, we've got
15 people from the public health field, people from the
16 legal profession, people from the laboratory side,
17 clinicians like me, et cetera.

18 DR. MANSFIELD: I agree, but I just think there
19 may be a distinct feeling among industry about whether
20 it's reasonable to have the sole source or not. I mean,
21 I think it's somewhat regrettable, from the FDA point of
22 view, that a lot of these patented tests, sole source,

1 that you talk about are laboratory-developed tests.

2 What I want to actually segue into is, I'm in
3 personalized medicine. That's my job right now, and as
4 Marc brought up, there are going to be tests that go
5 along that to say, this is how you should use this drug,
6 and those tests are going to be required before you use
7 the drug. Probably, a lot of them are going to be
8 genetic tests, and FDA believes that those are tests that
9 do not merit enforcement discretion and will probably
10 require PMA, which is a fairly high bar in the regulatory
11 world.

12 So I've heard from numerous IVD companies that
13 they don't like the risk involved. If they get in and
14 they put all the work into developing this diagnostic and
15 go through the PMA and the second they're out the door,
16 everyone else can knock them off, they're not going to do
17 it.

18 So I'm a little -- I think you should take --

19 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Well, then how do you
20 explain KRS testing or treatment?

21 DR. MANSFIELD: KRS didn't need to go through a
22 PMA process.

1 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But it's going through
2 the process and there are companies, there are commercial
3 laboratories, academic laboratories, and there are IVD
4 manufacturers.

5 DR. MANSFIELD: I'm not saying it won't happen.
6 I'm saying I've heard from a lot of companies. They
7 don't like the risk.

8 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There's a slew of
9 different laboratories in IVD that actually are going
10 through the process of it and there's no patent for the
11 KRS.

12 DR. MANSFIELD: Right, right.

13 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I understand that you
14 didn't go through a PMA process, but there is a company
15 going through that. There is a cost associated with
16 that.

17 DR. MANSFIELD: I'm just relating what I've
18 heard. I'm not advocating one way or the other, but if
19 this actually discourages companies from developing the
20 tests that would get the drug on the market, it may have
21 some unintended consequences. I don't know. You need to
22 analyze that.

1 And the other thing is the size of the market I
2 think actually drives how many labs will do this. If
3 it's a relatively small market, then there aren't going
4 to be 10 labs doing it because they can't all make money
5 off of it. So it's not just about patentability.

6 DR. EVANS: Rochelle, and then we'll stop for a
7 break.

8 MS. DREYFUSS: I just have a couple of little
9 things. One was on the comments that came from the
10 universities. It's important when you think about the
11 university comments to realize that universities are kind
12 of strange. They're not like companies. The technology
13 transfer office does a lot of licensing out but
14 individual researchers do most of the licensing in, if
15 they license in at all. So they're not seeing the entire
16 picture and if they did, then they might have a very
17 different view from the one that we saw and the comments
18 that we made.

19 On the composition of the committee, the other
20 thing that we didn't have is any antitrust people. So we
21 keep talking about this as though these recommendations
22 are making a huge change in the way that the world worked

1 before, and I would like to point out that that's very
2 much not true.

3 If you look at sort of the history of the
4 world, patents are only one component of encouraging
5 innovation. Competition is the other component of
6 encouraging innovation. When you have a lot of
7 competitors, then each competitor has to figure out ways
8 to make the price lower, to make the quality better, to
9 provide more information and so competition has in the
10 past been a huge motivator of innovation, at least as
11 much as the patent system has been.

12 Now do we have as much competition as we've had
13 before? I would submit that in the last 10 years, 20
14 years, in fact that's what's changed, is the level of
15 competition and it's changed in a number of ways.

16 First of all, in the last 10 years we got rid
17 of research exemptions. So when we're talking about
18 asking for research exemption, that's the way the world
19 was until a court decided that there were no research
20 exemptions and they did it on no information. So it's
21 not like there are high burdens that were jumped when the
22 law became the law that it is now. It happened in a

1 particular case and in that particular case, it looked
2 one way. The court wrote a very broad opinion and the
3 question now is whether that very broad opinion is
4 impacting on healthcare in a way that was completely
5 unforeseen by the court.

6 So this research exemption is not a new idea.
7 It's returning to an old idea that was part of the law
8 for 200-whatever years. In most cases, we had
9 competition because people could invent around patents.
10 So Jim started off by saying that patents are a limited
11 monopoly. I cringed when he said that, with all due
12 respect, because I think most patent lawyers don't think
13 patents are monopolies. Patents are one way of
14 accomplishing a particular result, solving a particular
15 problem, but there are almost always ways to invent
16 around it.

17 In this particular space with DNA, when you're
18 trying to do diagnostic tests of people by looking at
19 their DNA, there is no inventing around the DNA patent.
20 That is something that is completely different from
21 anything we have ever seen in history.

22 Third point, and it's the last one. The

1 breadth of the patent system. The patent system used to
2 be pretty narrowly directed at technological arts. It
3 has expanded in the last 10 years, I would say, so that
4 it covers business methods, including the methods of
5 being a physician and treating your patients, but that is
6 something new.

7 So the fact that this committee wants to think
8 about that not through the accretion of common law cases
9 where the court did not have any evidence but by looking
10 at evidence and thinking about how these past decisions
11 are now affecting patient access seems to me to be not
12 the incredibly revolutionary thing that several of the
13 speakers have made it out to be.

14 So on the burden of proof, I don't understand
15 the burden of proof. I don't understand why it's any
16 higher for us than it is for the courts.

17 I have one more thing. That's this, that the
18 patent system used to encourage leapfrogging. That is
19 not cherry-picking the next most easy thing to do. It
20 used to encourage people to really push the frontiers of
21 science forward because it was hard to get patents.

22 In the last bunch of years, it's become easier

1 to get patents. You don't have to have as inventive a
2 step. The Supreme Court maybe pulled back on that. We
3 have to see how that works out, but until now, it's not
4 been that you could just go out and start sort of cherry-
5 picking the things that are there, getting patent
6 protection for it. Things that were minor leaps, that
7 were simply fairly easy to do, might require some work
8 but fairly easy to do, people did because of competitive
9 reasons, not because of patents.

10 DR. EVANS: I would just add I was reminded
11 that regarding the composition of the committee, Emily
12 Winn-Deen did represent the industry diagnostics, IVMDI-
13 type perspectives.

14 So, all right, let's adjourn for 15 minutes and
15 we'll start back at 3:20.

16 [Recess.]

17 DR. TEUTSCH: All right, everyone. Time to
18 regroup here, and we've got to get down to brass tacks
19 because we've got to get these recommendations reviewed
20 and moved on. Clearly, we're hearing lots of different
21 perspectives.

22 As I turn it back to Jim, what I think we'll be

1 doing is, as we go through them, we're going to limit the
2 discussions to some of the salient issues around the
3 recommendations and then try to get a clear sense and
4 vote on them as to where we stand, how close we are,
5 since I know there's some people who are speaking a great
6 deal and others who are quiet and we need to know sort of
7 are we on track as a group.

8 So, Jim, all right. Sultamonic Jim.

9 DR. EVANS: There you go. I'm not going to
10 threaten to cut any babies in half, though, I promise.

11 All right. So we do need to get through these
12 recommendations. We need to determine whether we are
13 going to adopt them or not. This is certainly -- these
14 are open for wordsmithing. They are open for
15 adjustments, and if any of you have adjustments that make
16 you feel like, okay, I could vote for it with this or
17 that, by all means, bring it up, but we're going to try
18 to move along relatively rapidly here.

19 The first three are going to be the toughest.

20 All right. They're going to be the ones that evoke the
21 most contentious debate, but we can't debate forever.

22 You guys have read the report. We've been through a lot

1 of this before.

2 So let's discuss this first one for a moment.

3 The Secretary of Health and Human Services should support
4 and work with the Secretary of Commerce to promote the
5 following statutory changes:

6 "(1) The creation of an exemption from liability for
7 infringement of patent claims on genes for
8 anyone making, using, ordering, offering for
9 sale, or selling a test developed under the
10 patent for patient care purposes."

11 Now, let me remind you of the Task Force's
12 rationale. This is meant to address patient access
13 problems and quality concerns, and to enable laboratories
14 and test kit makers to offer multiplex tests and other
15 innovations.

16 So let's have 10 minutes or so of discussion
17 about this, and then let's put it to a vote. Who wants
18 to talk?

19 DR. RODRIGUEZ: Laura Rodriguez from NIH, and I
20 just wanted to ask -- well, I guess first going back to
21 Marc's comment earlier about the technical members and
22 contributions that were made during the Task Force

1 committee, we were very much present and I was not
2 speaking during the earlier discussion because we had
3 shared our thoughts in that process and I thought that
4 was the forum for the committee to have that and also to
5 thank Jim, as well, for the process, as Mara said, that
6 was there so that different opinions could be heard in
7 there and say that we do share many of the comments that
8 came up before about actionability and some of the other
9 scope questions.

10 But for this particular issue, coming back to
11 the recommendation, I will apologize because I came on to
12 the Task Force later in the development, but I did have a
13 question about why the Task Force put forward this
14 language that really was so open in terms of this
15 exemption being available to anyone versus being more
16 restrictive around the patient care issue.

17 DR. EVANS: Right. First off, it all funnels
18 into patient care purposes, so that's meant to be the
19 overarching issue. The reason that we had it say, for
20 example, not just applicable to a physician ordering the
21 test or doing the test was primarily, correct me if I'm
22 wrong, other members of the Task Force, driven by Emily

1 Winn-Deen, who, as an industry representative, who
2 develops kits, et cetera, felt that it was unfairly
3 privileging the academic university laboratory over
4 others by allowing them the exemption.

5 So we were trying to broaden it to be inclusive
6 of industry, as well, and it was really her advocacy that
7 got us to add the making. Otherwise using or ordering,
8 right, or maybe offering for sale in the service lab
9 would have been sufficient. All right.

10 Who's next? David.

11 DR. DALE: Well, I speak in favor of this
12 statement or recommendation. I think the simplest way I
13 could phrase it is I don't see why anyone could prevent
14 me as an individual from asking a reliable source or
15 laboratory to sequence my whole genome and tell me what
16 they found. I think that's my personal right, and I
17 can't see how the University of California could have
18 sold that right to a company to deny me that access to
19 information.

20 Thinking about it as an access issue, I would
21 say the same thing to my patient, that I think they
22 should have access to that information without obstacles

1 as a part of general access to care.

2 So I would say this is the high ground in terms
3 of what we're doing in terms of principles and that sets
4 aside the issues surrounding the use of patented
5 materials for product development or therapeutics, but it
6 does improve access, and I think it's a modern thing to
7 do because when we started down this pathway of patenting
8 and licensing of specific genes, it was in an era when it
9 was a very unique thing to do and now we're certainly in
10 a different era and to look ahead, I think to continue on
11 the path we're on will be cumbersome and impair the
12 health of the country.

13 DR. EVANS: Other comments? Mara.

14 MS. ASPINALL: This is a process issue both on
15 Number 1. Have we ever heard from the PTO? Don't we
16 have a representative from the PTO? Because one of the
17 issues --

18 DR. EVANS: PTO joined us on every conference
19 call.

20 MS. ASPINALL: But are they here today to talk
21 about some of the issues that we've brought up and
22 discussed as to feasibility?

1 DR. EVANS: I mean, again, the PTO was
2 represented at every single conference call that we went
3 through.

4 MS. ASPINALL: And their comments on some of
5 the questions? I don't remember anything.

6 DR. EVANS: They informed us all along the way
7 about the recommendations, et cetera.

8 MS. ASPINALL: But on the specific questions
9 about feasibility and viability, as we got close to the
10 end of the recommendations?

11 DR. EVANS: I don't think that this, for
12 example, recommendation, I don't think that PTO is
13 particularly relevant to this particular recommendation.
14 This would kind of take the PTO out of it. It would say
15 --

16 MS. ASPINALL: Well, I mean, I would think that
17 by definition of taking them out of it, they would have a
18 strong opinion about it.

19 DR. EVANS: Again, they were there in every
20 conference call.

21 MS. DREYFUSS: The PTO only decides whether
22 there should be a patent. They have nothing to do with

1 infringement or exemptions from liability. That just is
2 not something that PTO does.

3 MS. ASPINALL: They have come out in various
4 statements over the years and talking about what they
5 believe on how infringements and how they structure
6 patents and one of the things you talked about is the
7 patentability of new claims and why --

8 MS. DREYFUSS: Yes. But this doesn't affect
9 patentability.

10 MS. ASPINALL: -- this is something -- as I
11 said, this is both Number 1 and then more broadly. So I
12 wanted to know if their representative was here and we
13 could talk to them today.

14 DR. EVANS: Certainly, I mean, it doesn't look
15 like at the table we have one now, but again I would
16 assure that PTO has been intimately involved.

17 MS. DREYFUSS: When we added the last bit that
18 Jim just described, we spent a lot of time talking about
19 whether these patents would even be infringed by the
20 kinds of things that are being sold. We spent a lot of
21 time talking to them about it, but that was just because
22 they're patent lawyers, not because they're the PTO.

1 MS. ASPINALL: On this comment in particular,
2 was this the one -- and I don't remember -- Deb Leonard
3 had some issues on?

4 DR. EVANS: Deb Leonard signed off on this.
5 She was in support of it.

6 MS. CARR: I just wanted to clarify, I think.
7 This may not be what you're getting at, Mara, but the
8 agency experts were part of the Task Force to provide
9 technical information and it's important that we don't, I
10 think, read anything one way or another into their
11 participation in the Task Force. They're technical
12 experts and providing information and technical
13 corrections.

14 MS. ASPINALL: Speak for the agency with an
15 opinion.

16 MS. CARR: Right. And whether they support one
17 thing or another, if you were getting at the feasibility,
18 the question of feasibility, John Legeider may have -- I
19 don't know that we actually probed that with him, but he,
20 as Jim said, was very much involved in the Task Force
21 meetings.

22 MS. ASPINALL: I was moving it to the broader

1 issue as opposed to on the committee, on the technical
2 expertise that he and others gave us.

3 DR. EVANS: All right. I think Paul is next.

4 DR. BILLINGS: I just have a question, a point
5 of clarification about this.

6 So does this have implications then for the
7 next generation of patents on tests in the sense that a
8 patent without an infringement capability or component is
9 a different kind of patent than before?

10 DR. EVANS: Yes. I think that what this does
11 is it tries to dissect out specific claims, right, and
12 the claims that would be operative here would be claims
13 that have to do with diagnosis. So this wouldn't affect
14 claims on therapeutics, et cetera, but it would certainly
15 -- yes, it would have an impact on diagnostic analysis of
16 nucleic acids in the future.

17 DR. BILLINGS: Rochelle, do you not agree with
18 that?

19 MS. DREYFUSS: This is just an exemption from
20 liability for infringement of the patent claim on the
21 genes. So if there were patent claims --

22 DR. BILLINGS: No, that's not what it says. It

1 says tests. It's all tests.

2 MS. DREYFUSS: The patent claims on the genes
3 that are involved in the test. So if you had invented
4 some fabulous new test, you could get a patent on the
5 test.

6 DR. BILLINGS: That's not what it says.

7 DR. EVANS: A test developed under the patent
8 --

9 MS. DREYFUSS: On genes.

10 DR. EVANS: -- for patent under the patent.
11 Okay.

12 DR. BILLINGS: What patent?

13 DR. EVANS: The exemption from liability for
14 infringement of patent claims on genes.

15 MS. DREYFUSS: On genes.

16 DR. EVANS: Patent claims on genes. So let's
17 say you invented some fabulous new test for something.
18 So you could get a patent on the test, somebody else
19 might have a patent on the gene. So, first of all,
20 that's one of the problems this is trying to treat, is
21 that somebody who wants to develop a brand new test
22 should be allowed to develop the test. That's the second

1 part.

2 This part says that if somebody does develop
3 the test, they would -- somebody would still have to pay
4 them royalties for the test, but they wouldn't have to
5 pay royalties to the person who owns the patent on the
6 genes for doing the tests.

7 DR. EVANS: Are you -- this might be a good
8 point. Does there need to be a modifier test that says
9 diagnostic test? I mean, is that necessary? Is that
10 what you're advocating?

11 DR. BILLINGS: Well, I want to understand the
12 implications for patents on genes, patents on tests.

13 DR. EVANS: This says patent claims on genes.

14 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: You can develop a test
15 and you can patent the actual process of the test.
16 That's no different than we did in the whole report. So
17 you can come out with a new PCR methodology to detect
18 this gene and you can patent that methodology, but you
19 wouldn't be infringing on the patent of the gene.

20 DR. EVANS: Gwen, I think you were next.

21 MS. DARIEN: So perhaps this is a naive
22 comment, but if the entire reason to develop these

1 diagnostic tests is to improve patient care, how could
2 there be an objection to this recommendation?

3 DR. EVANS: Well, you're probably asking the
4 wrong guy.

5 MS. DARIEN: It's a general comment, but the
6 fact is, is that the entire basis of what we're looking
7 at here is improving patient care and if you improve
8 diagnostics, then you improve the treatment, then that
9 flows into therapeutics and then that flows into --

10 DR. EVANS: And that's what I think the fear
11 is. Here's the fear. You're going to harm patient care
12 by doing this. That's the fear. I don't think that's
13 justified. I've enumerated those reasons over and over.
14 The fear, though, by the people who object to it is that
15 you're going to harm patient care. I'm dismissing those
16 people who are worried simply about profits, et cetera,
17 but that would be the legitimate response.

18 MS. ASPINALL: No, and I think the fear is not
19 necessarily today because you'd say the gene tests are
20 already out there. So you're saying anyone can infringe
21 on the patents that we have. We have a patent system for
22 a reason. We might improve patient care if all

1 healthcare was free and we're debating that in a pretty
2 broad way as to lowering the costs so there's more access
3 for everybody all the time.

4 We have a process and what this says is the
5 process of gene patents was nice, but we don't respect it
6 and anyone can use the genes. I understand the issue
7 about the test. Anyone can use the genes anyway and what
8 I would say is does it -- for diagnostic purposes. I
9 think it has broader implications than that, but I
10 understand that's what it says and that what happens in
11 the next generation when you need to be able to create
12 something that has some economic viability as the rest of
13 the healthcare system looks at.

14 DR. EVANS: So what I would propose is that --
15 let me ask a very, very specific question. Does anybody
16 have wording changes, specific wording changes that they
17 feel would make this substantially better? I'm not
18 talking about, yes, erase it all, right. I mean if
19 that's the case, you'll just vote against it, right.

20 Yes, David.

21 DR. DALE: I just would insert the word
22 "diagnostic" before "test." I think it adds clarity.

1 DR. MANSFIELD: I would just put the clarifying
2 for infringement of patent claims on genes but not
3 methods or whatever it is that you mean to exclude
4 because I'm not sure I would have read this exactly that
5 way about the health.

6 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: This was an issue that
7 was brought in our conference call, that we needed to be
8 really clear --

9 DR. EVANS: Oh, that's a good point, Andrea.

10 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: -- in the methodology.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: In the additional information.

12 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Somebody brought it up
13 during our discussions.

14 DR. EVANS: Okay. Is this what people suggest
15 here? Andrea, is this a problem, given the issue of --
16 okay. So here's a potential monkey-wrench by inserting
17 diagnostic. Many of these tests will be used to
18 determine predisposition. That's not a diagnostic issue.
19 So it makes me wonder whether diagnostic is --

20 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Saying predisposition
21 is not a diagnostic?

22 DR. EVANS: Well, I think a lot of people would

1 construe it that way.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: I think diagnostic usually means
3 for people who have a condition --

4 DR. EVANS: I'm not exactly -- when we do BRCA
5 testing, that's not considered a diagnostic test. It's
6 considered a predisposition test.

7 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Actually, --

8 DR. DALE: I withdraw my suggestion.

9 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: -- I disagree with
10 that, but I don't think that's the big issue here.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: You do what?

12 DR. DALE: I agree to take it back out.

13 DR. TEUTSCH: Okay.

14 DR. MANSFIELD: Under FDA's regulations,
15 diagnostic doesn't just mean diagnosis. So we can look
16 at the IVD definition.

17 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: So, for example,
18 pharmacogenetic testing for 2D6 for metabolism is --

19 DR. MANSFIELD: Right.

20 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: -- screening and
21 monitoring.

22 DR. MANSFIELD: Anything.

1 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: So we need to cover
2 all.

3 DR. EVANS: And we need to cover it all.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: For some of these issues, like
5 the genes and not methods, what we mean by diagnostic,
6 there needs to be a paragraph or so that provides a
7 little elaboration of those kind of details so people
8 know what we mean.

9 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But I don't think we
10 can have a comprehensive list to all this, so some
11 examples.

12 DR. EVANS: At this point, I think we should
13 vote, and the Committee members vote.

14 Darren brings up an important issue. Here is
15 what I would propose. I think we can wait and ask that
16 question, so I would propose at this point that we vote
17 on this and then proceed. Any last-minute comments
18 before we vote?

19 [No response.]

20 DR. EVANS: All right. So all in favor of this
21 recommendation, raise your hands.

22 [Show of hands.]

1 DR. TEUTSCH: Eleven.

2 DR. EVANS: All opposed?

3 [Show of hands.]

4 DR. TEUTSCH: Three.

5 DR. EVANS: All right. Oh, abstentions, good
6 point. Abstentions or recusals, any abstentions or
7 recusals?

8 DR. TEUTSCH: I think we're good.

9 DR. EVANS: Okay, Number 2. Let me go to the
10 wording on the next point. The second statutory change
11 is research exemption. It would enable test developers
12 to conduct research to design new tests, and it reads as
13 follows:

14 "The creation of an exemption from patent
15 infringement liability for those who use
16 patent-protected genes in the pursuit of
17 research. Related healthcare and research
18 entities also should be covered by this
19 exemption."

20 So are there general comments and are there
21 specific comments about how this could be improved, if
22 you in general favor it?

1 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I just have a question on there
2 because the term "research" isn't defined. So I thought
3 it would be helpful, to better understand what the goals
4 here are, to have a definition of that.

5 DR. WILLIAMS: I would add to that "related
6 healthcare and research entities." I mean, this one, for
7 me, is problematic because it's not adequately explicit
8 about what we're really talking about.

9 DR. EVANS: Okay. So the reason that we
10 initially cast a wide net with regard to research was
11 that we wanted to not again privilege clinical research,
12 basic research, transitional research, not only because
13 we didn't want to privilege them, but it is often
14 difficult to parse those definitions.

15 I would certainly be in favor of any clarifying
16 language that people want to suggest that we can discuss.

17 Marc, did you have any ideas about how we might
18 be able to gain more specificity without undercutting a
19 research exemption?

20 DR. WILLIAMS: Well, I'm not sure I can come up
21 with the solution to it, but I do think that we could
22 create the same sort of a situation where we allow people

1 to self-define what they're doing, much the same way that
2 we'll be talking about with DTC, where they said, well,
3 we're not doing health-related tests.

4 If there are existing definitions of "research"
5 or what a healthcare entity is that we're really talking
6 about here, I think we're obligated to use those
7 definitions and to try and be as clean-cut about it as we
8 possibly can. I just would be uncomfortable that it's
9 just way too nebulous.

10 DR. EVANS: So one of the things we discussed
11 in the Task Force was whether we could gain tremendous
12 specificity by saying, "in the pursuit of NIH-funded
13 research." That would be one option. I'm just throwing
14 that out there. You're shaking your head. There are
15 problems with that, as well.

16 The other issue is "healthcare and research
17 entities." There actually are very specific definitions
18 for those.

19 Darren, do you remember? We talked about this
20 in the Task Force call. I believe [it is] actually
21 defined in Ganski-Frist, who a healthcare entity is.

22 There are specific recommendations or

1 definitions of that, but let's tackle the research issue
2 first. Do people feel that we should try to get more
3 granular about what research is? I think Marc's point is
4 a good one.

5 Andrea, you had some thoughts, I think, about,
6 for example, if we were to say "NIH-funded research," is
7 that problematic or health-related.

8 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There is more to NIH-
9 funded research.

10 DR. MANSFIELD: I mean, HMI, yes. What about
11 "health-related research"? Gwen?

12 MS. DARIEN: I don't even know which one to
13 use. I think "health-related research" is better, but
14 just for an example, which is from our organization,
15 we're the scientific partner for a major, major funding
16 initiative on cancer. Five teams were funded on this,
17 and it's not NIH-funded.

18 The whole point of this project is that they
19 are only funding team science. They are only funding
20 people that are crossing institutions. So IP issues are
21 huge to this. If the IP issues aren't solved, they
22 aren't going to be able to work with each other.

1 So I think that it has to be "health research."

2 Just to the second point, I would like Rochelle to
3 comment on the history of research exemptions, because
4 you started saying something about that earlier.

5 MS. DREYFUSS: Like in 1819 or something,
6 Justice Story wrote this case in which he said that there
7 is an exemption for people who are doing research for
8 their own curiosity, and that has always been understood
9 as meaning non-profit research, basically. There are
10 very few cases on it, because it was generally understood
11 that that was an exemption. Everybody in universities,
12 for example, assumed that they had that exemption.

13 Then in 1998, I think, there was this case
14 called Media v. Duke in which a professor sued Duke
15 University for using what had been his patented laser-
16 something or other, and he won. The court said, well,
17 anybody that is doing research in the ordinary course of
18 whatever their business is isn't entitled to the research
19 exemption. So then they said, well, what is the
20 university's business? The university's business is
21 doing research, and high-falutin' researchers, and
22 encouraging fancy students to come to their school. So

1 they decided that Duke didn't get the research exemption,
2 and by extension nobody would.

3 Now, it's a strange case, because first of all,
4 the facts are really weird. People don't usually sue
5 their own universities.

6 PARTICIPANT: They should.

7 MS. DREYFUSS: Don't tell my dean. It was a
8 kind of research tool. I can't remember what you did
9 with it, but it was a tool and various judges of the
10 Federal Circuit have since said, we really only meant
11 that for research tools; we really didn't mean it for
12 run-of-the-mill things, but they've never changed it at
13 all.

14 The Supreme Court got a chance to look at it,
15 but they didn't argue that issue. They argued, instead,
16 the statutory research defense, which is only for doing
17 research for FDA approval. So we have been living, in
18 the last 10 years, with people thinking that probably the
19 research exemption does continue, but not really knowing,
20 because we haven't had another case.

21 So in a way, this just clarifies what the law
22 is, and clarifies it in a way that I think quite a few of

1 the various judges on the Federal Circuit, informally,
2 would agree with. Certainly, the dicta in the Supreme
3 Court case, which looked at the statutory exemption,
4 indicated the Supreme Court was kind of on the side of
5 thinking that we should read patent law as having a
6 research exemption. Now, that research exemption would
7 be for non-profit research, so it would extend to
8 universities, not to industry.

9 In Europe, they've had an exemption like that
10 always, and it's a statutory exemption. It is clear what
11 it is. They have actually had the kind of problem that
12 you're talking about, of joint research projects, and
13 also projects being done by for-profit companies but
14 very, very far upstream. They say, if we're doing
15 upstream research, why are we any different from a
16 university doing upstream research?

17 So there has been a move in Europe to change it
18 to something more broad. This broadens what we thought
19 we had, because it doesn't only apply to non-profit
20 research but it broadens it in a way that it looks like
21 other countries are moving.

22 DR. EVANS: I would also bring up another thing

1 that is kind of interesting, and it gets to Marc's point
2 and Rochelle's point, Gwen.

3 I am skeptical, to some extent, of claims by
4 some of these new companies that we are going to be doing
5 research in a new way, but they might be. They really
6 might come up with new models that I don't think we
7 should dismiss.

8 I think that also would drive me to advocate
9 for the broad term and not put limitations on research.
10 I think all of those reasons, to me, dissuade one from
11 limiting it.

12 DR. WILLIAMS: Yes. I understand what you're
13 saying. I'm more comfortable with, we can really be more
14 definitional about the related healthcare and research
15 entities, and if we do have some definitions that we can
16 take from statute that seem to be applicable here, I
17 think it would be appropriate to reference those.

18 I would just say, philosophically, I think this
19 is really critically important, because to assume that a
20 patent holder is going to have all of the novel ideas
21 around a certain entity, I think that has not been the
22 case in history.

1 So I could see this really impeding important
2 science, particularly given the areas that we really, at
3 the present time, have no clue around, like regulation of
4 genes and this type of thing, where if you can't really
5 look at the gene but you're interested in the regulation,
6 how can you really answer those questions.

7 So I am philosophically predisposed to being in
8 favor of this, but I also recognize the fact that there
9 is potential for harm if we're not tight.

10 DR. EVANS: Mara, one more comment and then
11 let's take a vote.

12 MS. ASPINALL: I think it is part of what Marc
13 said, but I believe there is another Merck case around
14 universities and the ability to do research. So, to me,
15 this seems like a non-issue, because when people have
16 rights, they have rights to commercial --

17 DR. EVANS: It's very much an issue. For
18 example, BRCA1 and 2 research, clinical research funded
19 by the NIH was shut down.

20 MS. ASPINALL: I know I've heard that, and
21 there have been some negotiations around that one in
22 particular, but if you look at a number of the issues

1 [the benefits] that you get are only on commercial
2 rights, not on research rights.

3 MS. DREYFUSS: No. The statutory research
4 exemption, which is the one that was at issue in the
5 Merck case, applies if you're doing research in order to
6 generate data that is going to be submitted to the FDA,
7 to federal agencies.

8 So if you're doing research that is going to be
9 submitted to state agencies, or that is not going to be
10 submitted to any agency at all, you don't get the benefit
11 of that.

12 It is a very narrow research exemption. It's
13 written a little bit broader, but it was basically done
14 so that generic drug companies could do research to prove
15 bioequivalence. It is pretty narrow, and the Supreme
16 Court broadened it a little bit, but you still have to
17 have data. You still have to be generating data.

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think if you look at
19 any of the diagnostic licenses that I've ever seen, it is
20 not relevant in the current diagnostic licenses you get
21 from universities today.

22 DR. EVANS: Let me just say that I think it's

1 well established that those doing research do not have
2 any kind of established exemption, except in narrow
3 circumstances, like if they're going to submit.

4 MS. DREYFUSS: Some universities are following
5 the nine points, and the nine points suggest that they
6 reserve research rights either for themselves.

7 DR. EVANS: Some are and some are not.

8 MS. DREYFUSS: So most universities do that, or
9 for other universities, but they're not reserving
10 research rights in the kind of situation where there is a
11 joint venture between the university and a for-profit
12 company.

13 In Europe, you're seeing these cases being
14 brought by for-profit companies who say they think they
15 should have the same rights to do upstream research as
16 anybody else.

17 DR. EVANS: With the understanding that we will
18 explicitly define a healthcare and research entity using
19 established nomenclature, how many are in favor of this
20 recommendation?

21 [Show of hands.]

22 DR. EVANS: Okay. And opposed?

1 [Show of hands.]

2 DR. EVANS: Okay, you're abstaining. Okay.

3 Now, the third issue is connected. We might
4 have to have two votes on the third issue. There was
5 some question in the Task Force as to whether, in those
6 first recommendations, association patents should be
7 folded in, reading something like liability for
8 infringement of patent claims, including association
9 patents.

10 The reason I did not address that at the time
11 is that we have a separate recommendation that could
12 stand on its own, all right, and this recommendation
13 specifically addresses association patent claims. The
14 rationale behind this was not that there was some
15 discrete statutory function that the Secretary could
16 advocate, not that there was some executive action she
17 could carry out, but the reason the Task Force felt that
18 association patents should be addressed is that they are
19 an extraordinarily active area of debate and interest now
20 in the field.

21 There are pending court cases that hinge, that
22 revolve around association patents, and the courts pay

1 attention to what bodies, such as ours, say. So we felt
2 we should weigh in on it and what this would do is say
3 the Secretary should use her powers to discourage the
4 seeking, the granting, and the invoking of simple
5 association patent claims. It is the committee's
6 position that these claims represent basic laws of nature
7 that cannot be invented around, and I would make two
8 comments about this.

9 One is that again, as you can see, it's quite a
10 general thing. It doesn't advocate some specific action.

11 The word "simple" was one that we spent a lot of time on
12 and the reason for the insertion of "simple" there is
13 that there is, my understanding and Rochelle can speak,
14 I'm sure, in a more knowledgeable way to this, there is
15 question as to whether, once complex enough, would, say,
16 an algorithm that associates two things rise to the level
17 of an invention. That will ultimately be something that
18 the courts will have to work out.

19 What we are trying to advocate for here is that
20 we did not feel, most of us on the Task Force, that
21 simple associations, say GWAS results that are now
22 flooding the medical literature, where we say this locus

1 is related to a relative risk of 1.3 for this disease,
2 it's a simple association, and we didn't feel that that
3 association should be patentable.

4 We did not want to imply that there couldn't be
5 such labyrinthic and complex algorithm that took
6 tremendous inventiveness that we would want to preclude
7 all options for patenting.

8 So I'll be quiet now. Any comments on this? I
9 think we should have basically a discussion about whether
10 this should, if we want, stand on its own or should we
11 fold it into the first rec.

12 Marc.

13 DR. WILLIAMS: So I would have two comments.
14 First of all, simple is just not adequately explicit. No
15 one would know what simple means and everybody would
16 define it differently.

17 DR. EVANS: Well, we do address it in the
18 report.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: I know you address it, but it's
20 not defined in an explicit way so that somebody
21 reasonable could look at it and say this is simple, this
22 is not, and so in some ways that's going to be

1 problematic.

2 I think the more problematic thing here relates
3 to the fact that in fact, as opposed to the first two
4 instances where I think we do have a lot of challenge, a
5 lot of unclarity, the fact is that there are cases that
6 are going to provide clarity to this issue that are under
7 adjudication.

8 I'm not sure that what you said, which is the
9 courts pay attention to what bodies like this say, I'm
10 not sure that that realistically is true in the sense of
11 how the court would know that this is what we're saying,
12 but it seems to me that if the court is actively
13 considering this, that this may be premature.

14 DR. EVANS: Other comments? Rochelle?

15 MS. DREYFUSS: I don't think it is premature.
16 The federal circuit is certainly struggling with that
17 same question of whether all associations are patentable
18 or not. They just handed down an opinion a couple of
19 weeks ago struggling with exactly that question. That
20 was one where you injected the patient with something and
21 then you saw how it was metabolized. They said, well,
22 that is not a law of nature, although somebody might say

1 it is a law of nature. How you metabolize that thing is
2 a law of nature.

3 DR. EVANS: That was Prometheus.

4 MS. DREYFUSS: Yes. That was Prometheus, but
5 maybe we could do something like a direct association
6 between a genotype and a phenotype, because that would
7 narrow it to genes.

8 DR. EVANS: That's interesting.

9 MS. DREYFUSS: So we would be out of the rest
10 of the Prometheus world.

11 DR. EVANS: That would be invoking direct
12 association product claims between a genotype and a
13 phenotype.

14 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Yes. Because when you
15 use the direct association between the phenotype and
16 genotype, when you have to use multiple genes to do a
17 calculation that you invented that form of the
18 calculation, then that goes into the invention part. So
19 I think that will actually help to motivate this.

20 DR. EVANS: That's interesting.

21 MS. DREYFUSS: Then you get out of using the
22 words "association patent claims."

1 DR. EVANS: Yes. So, okay.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: Again, I want to make sure we
3 all understand what we mean by "direct."

4 DR. EVANS: Again, I think your points are well
5 taken, and we talked a lot about this in the Task Force.

6 At some level, you read the U.S. Constitution, there are
7 all kinds of things that require interpretation. It's
8 not completely clear, but you can't be so specific that
9 you gut the intent. You have to let the process kind of
10 define what those are.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: Well, the process will
12 ultimately define what they are, but I'm saying that I
13 think that we have -- this is not something like life,
14 liberty, and the pursuit of happiness, which I think are
15 very difficult to define in any reasonable sense of the
16 term, but when we talk about a genotype and a phenotype,
17 I think we can take a crack at that. I think we could
18 have a reasonable definition of what we consider to be
19 direct.

20 DR. EVANS: So give me some possible wording
21 here: "Discourage seeking, granting, and invoking of
22 association patent claims"? I mean how would you

1 rephrase this to get that desired level?

2 MS. DREYFUSS: Would it be enough to define
3 "direct" in the comments?

4 DR. WILLIAMS: That's fine, but we need to do
5 that if we're going to vote on this. I mean, this gets
6 at the point that was made, I think, in the previous one,
7 which is, we can vote on it, but if we don't really
8 understand or don't agree with what the definition of the
9 comments are going to be, then it's problematic.

10 DR. MANSFIELD: Sheila.

11 MS. WALCOFF: I was just going to say I have --
12 well, you finish your thought because it wasn't totally
13 done.

14 DR. EVANS: I was going to say, we could go so
15 far as to say the association between a single gene's
16 allele, a single allele and a phenotype. The problem I
17 get to is that, okay, look at the prostate cancer
18 situation. There are now really four well-established
19 loci that result in an increased risk if you have the
20 risk allele of prostate cancer. It doesn't take a rocket
21 scientist or geneticist to figure out that, okay, I can
22 just use all four loci. I mean to me, that's still a

1 direct association.

2 So I tend to not want to get so granular that
3 we start to name the number of loci, et cetera. I
4 understand that "direct" has some nebulousness associated
5 with it, but I'm not sure we can do better.

6 Anybody?

7 MS. WALCOFF: I'm just going to make my comment
8 and then my recommendation, and just back to the original
9 point on the courts and what is happening, and what this
10 committee's role is.

11 I mean, we get right back to it again. Our
12 recommendation is for the Secretary. We're not making
13 recommendations to a court, various courts, on any
14 particular case. At the end of the day, when she
15 receives these recommendations, she is going to have to
16 reconcile those with whatever the current case law is and
17 whatever the future rulings are from those pending cases.

18 She will have to get advice from OGC on doing that.

19 And so, I was actually going to recommend, in
20 terms of the recommendations, that some of these things
21 be more couched as examples, which might get us past this
22 definitional question, because I think it is going to be

1 one that is somewhat going to depend on where the law is
2 at that point.

3 We have, under Recommendation No. 7, "Licensing
4 policies governing federally-funded research to
5 facilitate access." At the end of the day, Numbers 2, 4,
6 and I think 6 -- I have listed out a number of them --
7 really could be tucked under this, because the
8 Secretary's authority and power really rests, in these
9 cases, with what she can and cannot do with federal
10 funds.

11 And so, if we are going to be recommending that
12 there be a more thorough legal review -- and that's some
13 of the sticking points I have in this report, is I don't
14 feel like I have enough information on exactly where the
15 law is with respect to some of the claims we're making --
16 perhaps we tuck those in as examples, under the part
17 about legal review.

18 DR. EVANS: So, again, I don't think you were
19 here when we went over how we were going to approach this
20 particular session. I think that I am in favor of going
21 through these recommendations and deciding whether we
22 want them or not.

1 I think that I would like to see us decide
2 whether we want to say something about association patent
3 claims. If we don't, then we can talk about, do we want
4 to tuck it in as an example. I'm not sure exactly where
5 that would go.

6 In response to what the Secretary can do with
7 this, I think we, on the Task Force, were very cognizant
8 of the fact that this is a nebulous recommendation, but I
9 think that is important for the following reason.

10 There is some attention paid to what we say,
11 and as a body that has spent five years looking at this,
12 I think it is not unreasonable to take a stand on certain
13 things that may be for purposes that go beyond, simply,
14 the Secretary should absolutely do this.

15 It's not unreasonable to say, well, we've spent
16 five years, this is what we think, and we would like the
17 Secretary to use her powers to discourage the seekings.
18 See what I'm saying?

19 So what I think we need to do is, we need to
20 decide whether we want to say this. If there are
21 discrete changes to the wording that could make it
22 better, I think we should do that. At this point, I have

1 trouble finding a better modifier than "direct".

2 Any other ideas?

3 DR. DALE: Jim, if I could help. At least I
4 would suggest deleting the second phrase "the committee's
5 position," and moving that phrase "if necessary" into the
6 discussion. So then we are left with [choosing] the
7 position [of] whether we should encourage her to use her
8 powers, discourage her from using her powers, or say
9 nothing.

10 I would favor leaving the phrase as it is, but
11 simply better defining "association patent claims"; that
12 is, have a modifier just to say what that is.

13 DR. EVANS: What kind of modifier do you think?

14 DR. DALE: I would say that is and put it into
15 plain English.

16 DR. EVANS: I just heard Rochelle say a direct
17 correlation between that. So what about something like
18 this: "The Secretary should use her powers to discourage
19 the seeking, the granting, and the invoking of direct
20 association patent claims on a direct correlation."

21 DR. DALE: You need another word than
22 "association". So the simple word is "link".

1 DR. EVANS: Muin.

2 DR. KHOURY: I don't know what the word
3 "direct" means as opposed to "indirect". I mean, what
4 we're talking about are genotype/phenotype associations
5 or genotype/phenotype correlations or linkages, whatever
6 you want to use. I mean, if it's indirect, does it make
7 it more patentable? I don't know what it means. Just
8 genotype/phenotype correlation, why complicate it?

9 DR. TEUTSCH: Sometimes you have multiple
10 polygenic things that really will be discoveries.

11 DR. KHOURY: But there are still
12 genotype/phenotype correlations at multiple loci. I
13 mean, if you put five prostate cancer SNPs together, it
14 is still a genotype/phenotype association.

15 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: We're making a
16 distinction between a genotype/phenotype, for example, of
17 single genes versus expression of 21 different genes,
18 where you have to run an algorithm that you have come up
19 with, and where, through that algorithm --

20 DR. EVANS: That's what we're trying to parse.

21 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: So that is patentable,
22 and we don't want it to be in here. So it's just the law

1 of nature that you have these two findings, that you
2 didn't have to come up with any mathematical computation
3 for all the different --

4 DR. WILLIAMS: So maybe what we're talking
5 about as a difference here, or maybe I'm completely
6 missing the point, is patenting an observation of an
7 association as opposed to taking that observation and
8 doing something with it.

9 DR. EVANS: It requires little in the way of
10 sophisticated inference.

11 MS. ASPINALL: But don't you want to put single
12 gene in, then, as Andrea just described?

13 DR. EVANS: Well, no. I definitely don't want
14 to put single genes in.

15 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: It could be more than
16 this. You might find 15 different genes.

17 DR. EVANS: For example, diabetes. It doesn't,
18 again, take a great intellectual leap to say, there are
19 19 Type II diabetes loci that have been documented, and
20 we're going to combine those. I mean, any first-year
21 statistics class student can do that. I think that we
22 certainly don't want to say "single gene".

1 Again, what we originally had here is invoking
2 of association patent claims. We had "simple" in there,
3 and, again, my initial view was, can I define precisely
4 what simple is? No, okay. I think like Potter Stuart
5 said, I know it when I see it. In other words, the
6 courts will --

7 DR. BILLINGS: That's not our role. We're here
8 as experts to be clear.

9 DR. EVANS: Well, as clear as we can, as clear
10 as we can.

11 DR. BILLINGS: We can be clearer than this.

12 DR. EVANS: Okay, how can we be clearer?

13 DR. BILLINGS: Well, we've just had a
14 suggestion of cutting out the second half of this thing,
15 which I think actually makes it clearer.

16 DR. EVANS: So we could put this in the report.

17 DR. BILLINGS: Of course. I mean, we're
18 talking about clarity of language here.

19 DR. EVANS: So just for the moment, we can
20 always back up on this, I'm going to delete that. Now it
21 reads: "The Secretary should use her powers to discourage
22 the seeking, the granting, and the invoking of direct

1 association patent claims between a genotype and a
2 phenotype."

3 DR. KHOURY: Jim, this can apply to multiple
4 genes.

5 DR. EVANS: It can.

6 DR. KHOURY: It could apply to one gene. It
7 could apply to whatever. Where things become a bit more
8 complicated is when people put genes together, make an
9 inference, develop algorithms.

10 DR. BILLINGS: But that's why people patent
11 that. There are going to be access issues to that, too.
12 I mean, the whole point, the whole argument you've just
13 made about patenting, we're going to have the problem
14 with algorithms put onto those things. There may be an
15 access issue.

16 MS. DREYFUSS: Our argument is a two-fold
17 argument. One is, you don't really need patents on these
18 things; second, there is an access issue.

19 The problem with complicated algorithms is, you
20 might actually need a patent on it because figuring it
21 out isn't going to be very easy to do; verifying it is
22 going to be very hard.

1 I mean, I do think maybe we have enough data to
2 say some of the things that we're saying, but I don't
3 think we have data to support that you get rid of patents
4 entirely.

5 DR. BILLINGS: As I said before, the report is
6 silent as to the quality of the data. That seems to be
7 glaring.

8 DR. EVANS: So again, bringing it back to this,
9 the Task Force felt that we did not want to preclude the
10 possibility that an association claim that relied on a
11 sophisticated algorithm, that took tremendous
12 inventiveness, would be disallowed. We did want to take
13 the stand that simple association patents or direct
14 associations were not legitimate.

15 I think at some point very soon, in the next
16 few minutes, we need to just vote on this. To me, the
17 remaining sticking point is the modifier: should we have
18 "direct" there; should we have "simple" there; or should
19 we have no modifier?

20 Marc.

21 DR. WILLIAMS: This is going to raise another
22 sticking point, which is, the other part of this that is

1 problematic is, how can the Secretary use her powers to
2 discourage? Does the Secretary in fact have any ability
3 to influence this at the present time?

4 If the answer is no, then we should get rid of
5 this.

6 DR. EVANS: Well, there is another option here
7 that that raises, and that is to not have this as a
8 formal recommendation but to put in the report that the
9 Task Force feels that association patents are
10 illegitimate. That's okay with me.

11 DR. RODRIGUEZ: You should do something with
12 "NIH-funded research".

13 DR. WILLIAMS: That is another recommendation.
14 I agree. I think I understand what simple is. I'm not
15 sure anybody else would agree with what I think simple
16 is.

17 I think that this is a problematic
18 recommendation. I think it would be good to highlight
19 this in the report and say we're very concerned about
20 this. There are some ongoing cases. We need to be
21 aware, and as appropriate, for the Department of Health
22 and Human Services to respond as this landscape begins to

1 change.

2 DR. EVANS: I think that gets to the issue,
3 too, the very legitimate issue, [that] none of us are
4 quite sure exactly what the Secretary is supposed to do
5 with this.

6 So I would move, then, that we make a statement
7 in the report that the committee feels, basically, this.

8 We could elaborate a little bit on what "simple" means.

9 I mean, we don't have to have the necessity for brevity
10 there that we would with the recommendation. So I think
11 that would be a very reasonable option.

12 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I don't have a vote, so I just
13 wanted to express my support for going in that direction
14 because of the outstanding questions and the court cases.

15 DR. EVANS: All right. Other input before we
16 take a vote as to that effect?

17 MS. WALCOFF: I might have a ridiculously basic
18 question, but in terms of the position that these claims,
19 which we're having a very hard time exactly defining,
20 represent basic laws of nature that cannot be invented
21 around, what is the basis of that, if we can't really
22 define what we're talking about?

1 DR. EVANS: Well, if you look, for example, at
2 Breyer's dissent to the rejection of their initial
3 granting of certiorari in the Metabolite case, that, if
4 I'm not mistaken, basically went to what he said, these
5 are laws of nature; they should not be subject to
6 patents.

7 We've taken that out, anyway. So that's the
8 issue.

9 MS. WALCOFF: Okay. So we're taking the whole
10 thing out?

11 DR. EVANS: Well, that is what we're
12 advocating.

13 MS. WALCOFF: That's my point. Where are we
14 putting it in the report?

15 DR. EVANS: We're going to put it in the
16 report.

17 MS. WALCOFF: That's my point. If it's in the
18 report, it's still part of the report.

19 DR. EVANS: It's a finding. It's something
20 that the committee, and that's what we're going to vote
21 on, I feel we've spent five years dealing with this. It
22 is not out of bounds for us to express some conclusions.

1 MS. WALCOFF: That's not my concern. I don't
2 understand the basis for it. Where did we talk about it?
3 I mean, it's just Breyer's dissent, that's what we're
4 relying on?

5 DR. EVANS: No. It's the question of whether
6 simple associations are patentable material because, as
7 we went through this morning in great detail, association
8 patents between genotype and phenotype present tremendous
9 potential obstacles to the use of multiplex tests, whole-
10 genome sequencing, et cetera. So they're very germane.

11 MS. WALCOFF: Are we certain that you cannot
12 invent around these associations that we are defining
13 that are not defined?

14 MS. ASPINALL: Let me just say something. I
15 mean technology fundamentally changes. The things that
16 we're calling simple associations now were not.

17 DR. EVANS: It's technology independent.

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: You cannot invent
19 around them.

20 DR. EVANS: Absolutely. It is an association
21 between saying, in the classic case, homocysteine levels
22 are tied to B-12 levels. It has nothing to do with

1 technology.

2 MS. ASPINALL: You go back 50 years, and these
3 are supposed to last over generations. Things that are
4 simple now and that we described are a direct influence.

5 DR. EVANS: No, no, Mara. Did you listen to
6 what I said? It is an association between two things.

7 Okay, I'm going to make a proposal. We need to
8 vote on it so we can move on. I'm going to propose that
9 we eliminate this recommendation, and that we put in the
10 report that the committee feels something basically along
11 these lines. I know everybody doesn't agree, but that's
12 why we're going to have a vote.

13 MS. WALCOFF: Two separate votes?

14 DR. EVANS: I think it's clear to me that there
15 is a consensus it should not be a recommendation.

16 MS. WALCOFF: So the question is, should it be
17 in the report?

18 DR. EVANS: Does anybody want to have a vote on
19 that? We can have a vote on that. Who wants to keep --

20 MS. WALCOFF: I thought it's whether it's in
21 the report.

22 DR. EVANS: Okay. So we're going to put it in

1 the report. What are you asking me?

2 MS. WALCOFF: I thought I heard you say we're
3 going to have a vote about -- I guess we're not having a
4 vote about it being a recommendation.

5 DR. EVANS: Let's have a vote. Let's have a
6 vote. Who wants this as a recommendation? Who's in
7 favor of having this as a recommendation? Who's against
8 it? Okay. So who abstains? All right.

9 So what we've decided then is that it's not
10 going to be a recommendation. What I would move is that
11 we at least address this in the report with wording that
12 is substantially similar to this.

13 Now, I would say we should have a vote on that.
14 Who would vote for that option?

15 [Show of hands.]

16 DR. EVANS: Okay. Who's against?

17 [Show of hands.]

18 DR. EVANS: Okay. So we initially had removed
19 the issue of law of nature, all right, from the
20 recommendation which isn't a recommendation anymore.

21 My view is that in the report, we can be more
22 expansive and I don't think there's an imperative to

1 remove that language at this point.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: My recollection from reading the
3 full report was that in the description about why this is
4 a potential problem, we do have adequate detail there
5 that does go into the issues relating to the law of
6 nature. So my recollection of this discussion was that
7 it actually was fairly broad. It was not just Breyer.
8 There were a number of other examples that were
9 presented, and I think that that stands on its own
10 reasonably well and that people can take from it what
11 they will.

12 DR. EVANS: Right. Okay. All right. I think
13 we've done most of the heavy lifting, but I might be
14 surprised. The remainder of the recommendations are
15 meant to -- there's going to be wording that says, and I
16 think that was in the original wording this morning in
17 the presentation, that says, okay, we recognize that
18 evoking statutory changes is a complex, hard process, and
19 you may not even choose, as the Secretary, to do this.

20 Because of the difficulties with that, we have
21 come up with a number of other recommendations that we
22 feel could address the issues that have been raised

1 during the report and that's what most of these really
2 focus on. So this one is concerning promoting adherence
3 to norms designed to ensure access. It's kind of long.

4 The Secretary should develop mechanisms to
5 promote voluntary adherence to the principles reflected
6 in NIH's Best Practices for the Licensing of Genomic
7 Inventions, the OECD Guidelines for Licensing of Genetic
8 Inventions, the NIH Policy for Sharing of Data Obtained
9 in NIH-Supported or Conducted Genome-Wide Association
10 Studies, and in the public interest. Nine points.

11 The Secretary of Health and Human Services
12 should also advocate that professional organizations
13 involved in intellectual property policy and practice in
14 this area work together to build on those norms and
15 practices as they relate to gene-based diagnostics by
16 articulating more specific conditions under which
17 exclusive licensing and non-exclusive licensing of uses
18 relevant to genetic testing are appropriate.
19 Professional societies should work cooperatively to
20 forego consensus positions with respect to gene patenting
21 and licensing policies.

22 B. The Secretary should encourage

1 stakeholders, for example industry, academic
2 institutions, researchers, patients, to continue their
3 work of developing a code of conduct that will enable
4 broad access to such technologies.

5 Now, as we discussed, one of the things that
6 inevitably came up with was the question should these
7 recommendations somehow have teeth. We're certainly all
8 familiar with this litany of recommendations that say
9 plain ice and should there be more in the way of teeth to
10 this and, if so, how would we do that? So why don't we
11 discuss those issues?

12 DR. TEUTSCH: I think the issue there, just to
13 be clear, these were already out there as voluntary
14 guidelines. So the question is what are we saying,
15 besides --

16 DR. EVANS: Besides these are good guidelines.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: If we think they're issues and
18 the report provides some evidence, then we probably need
19 to take out words, like "promote voluntary adherence" and
20 say "promote adherence," and give them some more clout.
21 I mean that's the question. Where do we want to go with
22 this?

1 DR. EVANS: Right.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: But it worries me, frankly, to
3 simply reiterate what's already out there as a
4 recommendation.

5 DR. EVANS: I know. I share that.

6 DR. TEUTSCH: I mean, if we think that they're
7 important.

8 DR. BILLINGS: I have a question and maybe we
9 don't have the -- this has to do with payment and the
10 Secretary's control of the purse strings.

11 But if the Secretary were to say something like
12 laboratories that don't license broadly and thus cause
13 all the problems that the report suggests that they might
14 in terms of access and quality, the laboratories will not
15 have access or entities doing business with them will not
16 have access to federal dollars that are administered by
17 HHS.

18 Wouldn't that have a rather strong impact on
19 the situation?

20 DR. EVANS: So, actually, in a subsequent
21 recommendation, we discussed that. There's also the
22 issue of, for example, whether Bayh-Dole allows the

1 Secretary, whether the law is such that that can be done,
2 say, with funding dollars, et cetera.

3 So one way of trying to put more teeth in this,
4 if we chose to do so, would be to, for example, get rid
5 of voluntary and that simple change does, I think, do a
6 little bit of work in communicating the frustration that
7 Steve articulates.

8 B is pretty much kind of milktoast, and I don't
9 know whether it makes sense to even have it. I mean, it
10 does seem --

11 MS. WALCOFF: Maybe you can make it more direct
12 in the way that Steve had suggested and instead of
13 encourage stakeholders to continue their work of
14 developing the code of conduct, I mean, you could make it
15 a little less milktoast by saying develop a code of
16 conduct by X or something, for review by something.

17 Then to the other point, there are also purse
18 strings without a doubt in terms of restrictions and
19 limitations on federal funding of grants and whatnot, so
20 long as it's not precluded by other statutory
21 restrictions which I think is what we're getting to in
22 terms of the evaluation of that.

1 DR. EVANS: So I guess we could -- okay. So
2 let me -- we can always go back. I don't mean to ram
3 anything through here.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: That's a pulse point. There's a
5 variety of things you can use. You talked about several.
6 One could be a contingent --

7 DR. EVANS: The whole recommendation went away.

8 DR. TEUTSCH: That they adhere to these things,
9 if they're going to seek --

10 DR. BILLINGS: It would be very interesting for
11 someone to tell us, this committee, what options for
12 influencing this kind of phenomenon we have, yes, so we
13 can make recommendations that then would be relevant.

14 DR. EVANS: What if we were to say that the
15 committee supports these following things, the nine
16 points, OECD, et cetera? Somebody help write this down,
17 if it makes sense. That the Secretary should investigate
18 ways of promoting adherence that might include or that
19 would include the use of funding as a deterrent or
20 incentive. Something like that?

21 DR. TEUTSCH: More than investigate is the
22 point.

1 DR. WILLIAMS: I don't know. I don't know that
2 I would -- I think again, within the recommendation that
3 goes to the Secretary, I was thinking along the same
4 lines that Jim was saying, that we think that these are
5 good guidelines for how things should go. They are
6 voluntary.

7 We, as a committee, do not know what avenues
8 would be available to promote adherence, if you want to
9 use those words. So we would recommend that the
10 Secretary investigate or explore what are the options to
11 promote adherence to these guidelines. I mean, I think
12 that that's a reasonable thing to do.

13 DR. EVANS: Again, I'm just thinking out loud
14 here. The committee supports guidelines and then we
15 could insert in there such as OECD, nine points, et
16 cetera, that encourage broad licensing and access to
17 diagnostic and genetic tests.

18 Okay. Help me out here. We would request that
19 the Secretary --

20 DR. WILLIAMS: I think technically we
21 recommend. We're advisory.

22 DR. EVANS: We recommend. Okay. We recommend

1 that the Secretary.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: Explore options that would
3 promote adherence beyond voluntary.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: I would go further and say
5 because you've got to explore them, you've got to
6 identify them and implement them.

7 DR. WILLIAMS: Explore, identify and implement
8 is what Steve just said.

9 DR. MANSFIELD: And implement such
10 recommendations in ways that go beyond simply --

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Adherence, that promote adherence
12 to those recommendations.

13 DR. MANSFIELD: Such recommendations. Oh,
14 well, we recommend the Secretary explore, identify and
15 implement such recommendations. Give me -- okay. What
16 were you saying?

17 DR. WILLIAMS: So that the Secretary explore,
18 identify and implement processes --

19 DR. MANSFIELD: And implement mechanisms.

20 DR. WILLIAMS: Mechanisms that --

21 DR. TEUTSCH: That promote adherence to those
22 guidelines.

1 DR. WILLIAMS: -- promote adherence, right.

2 DR. MANSFIELD: That promote --

3 DR. WILLIAMS: Promote adherence beyond
4 voluntary --

5 DR. EVANS: To these guidelines that go beyond
6 voluntary adherence.

7 DR. WILLIAMS: And then the second part of that
8 would be, I think, whoever suggested that we recommend
9 that the Secretary convene the group as opposed to just
10 continue, that we change the verb to convene, so that
11 there's an intentionality about bringing the people to
12 the table to figure it out.

13 DR. EVANS: Should convene.

14 DR. WILLIAMS: Whatever the second part that
15 you previously said.

16 DR. EVANS: The Secretary should convene
17 stakeholders.

18 DR. WILLIAMS: Yes.

19 DR. EVANS: Yes, okay.

20 MS. ASPINALL: That's consistent with what
21 we've done on previous reports. We've asked the
22 Secretary to convene people.

1 DR. EVANS: It is, yes. The Secretary should
2 convene stakeholders. We can worry about formatting
3 later. Okay. Stakeholders, for example industry,
4 academic institutions, researchers, to continue their
5 work of developing a code of conduct -- yes, yes. To
6 develop -- we'll have to wordsmith. To develop a code of
7 conduct that will enable broad access to such technology.
8 Okay.

9 Yes?

10 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I have a comment. So some of
11 the comments that I had have changed now that the
12 language has been altered a little bit and we're
13 exploring things and looking further at these issues, but
14 some of the power that the guidelines have had is the
15 fact that they are guidelines and they're voluntary and
16 they promote flexibility and by shifting to adherence, I
17 think again that, as written, things would have to be
18 looked at differently.

19 They weren't originally developed with the
20 intent of being regulations or anything that was
21 mandatory and so that could change how some of it works
22 and actually take away some of their power because the

1 flexibility to look at the individual situation is
2 helpful in moving some things forward, but as written and
3 in terms of convening, I think that is something that's
4 well within the scope of the Secretary to do and to bring
5 stakeholders together and to have them go through these
6 issues again and put something forward.

7 I think that could be very constructive, but
8 another question that I had again is that all of this
9 would only affect HHS-funded research.

10 DR. EVANS: Right. Absolutely.

11 DR. RODRIGUEZ: And so there's a question of
12 impact overall.

13 DR. EVANS: Right. That's an acknowledged
14 limitation of all these types of things. That's one of
15 the reasons for Recommendations 1 and 2.

16 MS. DREYFUSS: First of all, I think the
17 guidelines internally have some flexibility in them. So
18 taking and making them more -- making it more required
19 that you follow the guidelines doesn't remove all
20 flexibility.

21 But I thought Paul had some ideas of ways to
22 broaden the teeth by saying the Secretary -- maybe I

1 misunderstood you -- could also do things with funding of
2 organizations that deal with these organizations.

3 DR. BILLINGS: Exactly. I mean, she has both
4 direct and indirect influence on the environment in which
5 these laboratories and the patent holders exist in nature
6 and so --

7 DR. EVANS: So can you think -- so it sounds to
8 me like a possibility to include that would be to have a
9 sub-bullet that says something about the types of
10 mechanisms, right?

11 DR. BILLINGS: She has authorities and
12 influences. We don't happen to know all of them, but she
13 does and we want her to -- the point here is that we want
14 her to marshal them for this end.

15 DR. EVANS: And implement mechanisms using her
16 authority and resources?

17 DR. BILLINGS: Yes.

18 DR. EVANS: Mechanisms, using her authority,
19 and what was the other thing? Resources. Thank you.
20 Resources, in order to promote adherence to these
21 guidelines in a way that goes beyond voluntary adherence.
22 Okay?

1 All right. Other suggestions? Which point? I
2 mean, the one point is you can't get around it, right?
3 It's only going to impact NIH-funded research.

4 DR. RODRIGUEZ: Right. And may actually in
5 some ways be a disincentive to interact with HHS-funded
6 research if this is a problem and so that companies may
7 just not --

8 DR. EVANS: For most people it's the only game
9 in town.

10 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I don't know. I don't know
11 that really most -- again, talking about all of the
12 research that goes on in the private sector.

13 MS. ASPINALL: For lots of private sector
14 companies and the research and early developmental stage,
15 NIH funding is a very big piece of it.

16 DR. EVANS: So that actually is a good thing
17 for the potency of this.

18 All right. So we'll do some wordsmithing and
19 find some time tomorrow or something to circulate things.

20 DR. TEUTSCH: I think from a process point of
21 view, if we can get a sense that these are now
22 directionally correct, we should wordsmith them tonight

1 and bring them back to the whole committee, not the ones
2 that we've already voted with, but the ones that we're
3 still extensively rewriting, and get some final approval
4 on those tomorrow. We'll find some time.

5 DR. EVANS: Okay. That's right, and I'm going
6 to now move this one.

7 DR. TEUTSCH: So I think what you should
8 probably take a vote on those two that were basically
9 correct.

10 DR. EVANS: Yes, okay, right. Okay. I'm just
11 putting that at the end, so we'll still have it as a
12 model.

13 All right. So let me just go over it again.
14 This is for promoting adherence to norms designed to
15 ensure access.

16 The committee supports guidelines, and we'll
17 fill in the litany, that encourage broad licensing and
18 broad, I think we should probably have broad, modifying
19 those, as well, access to diagnostic genetic tests. We
20 recommend that the Secretary explore, identify and
21 implement mechanisms, using her authority and resources,
22 in order to promote or that will, I guess that would be,

1 that will promote adherence to these guidelines in a way
2 that goes beyond voluntary adherence.

3 The Secretary should convene stakeholders, for
4 example, to develop a code of conduct that will enable
5 broad access to such technologies.

6 So all those in favor.

7 [Show of hands.]

8 DR. TEUTSCH: 14, one abstention.

9 DR. EVANS: All right.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Any opposed?

11 DR. EVANS: All right. Let me get rid of that.

12 Okay. Enhancing transparency in licensing, and the
13 reason for this was, okay, there was some dissent here.
14 Gee, imagine that.

15 The Secretary should encourage holders of
16 patents associated with genetic tests and their licensees
17 to make information about patent licenses readily
18 available, either by making the signed licenses publicly
19 available or by disseminating information about their
20 technology and licensing conditions, including any terms
21 that pertain to the type of license, field of use, and
22 scope of the technologies that are still available.

1 And B. As a means to enhance public access to
2 information about the licensing of patents related to
3 gene-based diagnostics, the Secretary should direct NIH
4 to amend its Best Practices to the Licensing of Genomic
5 Inventions to encourage licensors and licensees to
6 include in their license contracts a provision that
7 allows each party to disclose information about its
8 licenses, including such factors as type of license,
9 field of use, and scope, in order to encourage next
10 generation innovation.

11 Comments?

12 DR. WILLIAMS: So I guess I would like to
13 understand if there was dissent about this, what the
14 nature of the --

15 DR. EVANS: That's what I'm trying to remember.

16 DR. WILLIAMS: -- dissent was and probably
17 better for someone that --

18 MS. ASPINALL: I think that several of the
19 universities also dissented to this in the letters and
20 just saying they did not want their financial information
21 on good, bad, or indifferent business practices public
22 information.

1 DR. WILLIAMS: So this is -- I don't want to
2 make this a pejorative sense of the term, but the issue
3 is then less about the fact that there could be
4 challenges relating to discovery of IP or things. It's
5 more related to public perception of what it is we're
6 actually doing with --

7 MS. ASPINALL: Disclosure on financial terms in
8 the effort to not say you negotiated a good deal or a bad
9 deal with this type of company or other university and
10 they did not want that information public.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: Do we say anything about
12 financial terms here? I mean, my reading of this, and
13 maybe again I completely missed the boat, but my reading
14 of this was really the idea was to know who was involved
15 so that people that are looking to actually be engaged
16 would at least know what the landscape looks like, that
17 it's not necessarily disclosing all financial information
18 or anything else like that, right? It's just who --

19 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: It's who has been
20 licensed to whom for what application and what it covers,
21 not what money or how. I mean just to know there's
22 already a license out there, so I don't have to try to do

1 this because there's already a license.

2 MS. ASPINALL: I think you have to make that
3 clear because terms and fields of use to many who had
4 read it said that's the term sheet, that's all the
5 conditions for which we're licensing.

6 DR. WILLIAMS: I would certainly favor
7 clarifying that because I don't think that that
8 information needs to be made public. I think then if
9 that's the case, if people are concerned that that's what
10 we're saying, then we need to modify the language to make
11 it clear that we're just trying to identify who's
12 actually involved and if licenses are out there.

13 MS. DREYFUSS: I thought that was the only
14 information we were requiring, but my impression was that
15 some people considered that trade secrets. What deals
16 they had, not the nature of the deal, the simple fact
17 that they had deals, they wish to regard as trade
18 secrets.

19 MS. ASPINALL: That was the second level that
20 was absolutely voiced by industry as well as research and
21 academia.

22 DR. EVANS: Brian Stanton was a dissenter on

1 this. I think he was the major dissenter and what he
2 says here is that he doesn't believe the evidence
3 supports the need for this.

4 First, patent information is readily available
5 from USPTO, the European Patent Office, the Japan Patent,
6 private sources, such as Google, and others.

7 So I think that, for example, the individuals
8 who pursued the case studies would argue that actually
9 this information is very hard to come by and I think most
10 of us would agree with that latter point.

11 So how could we change this then to address the
12 points that Mara and Marc, Rochelle were talking about?

13 MS. DREYFUSS: I think Brian was thinking of
14 finding out whether there were patents you could Google,
15 first of all, but that isn't so easy either, but what Bob
16 Keegan said was that it was very hard to find out who
17 you'd go to to even get a license and that just seems to
18 me to be the kind of information that ought not be
19 regarded as a trade secret.

20 I agree about the financial information. That
21 seems like really important information that people might
22 want to withhold. So I would try to change it so it's

1 clear it's not financial information but that people
2 would be able to find out who they need to get licenses
3 from if they want licenses because that's an important
4 part of getting access.

5 DR. WILLIAMS: The other point I would make, as
6 I read through both of those, is that the operative verb
7 for the Secretary in both of those cases is encourage
8 which implies voluntary and so that would also then raise
9 the question that we brought up previously which is are
10 we really looking just to enhance voluntary reporting or
11 do we really want to --

12 DR. EVANS: Should we use her authority?
13 Again, we could use the same wording here, that the
14 Secretary explore, identify and implement mechanisms
15 using her authority and resources, so that holders of
16 patents associated with genetic tests, blah-blah-blah,
17 and then have a clause that, for example, excludes the
18 financial aspects. Does that make sense? Well, in a way
19 this does it, right?

20 Here, let me go back to the full screen. I
21 mean what this is is about technology and licensing
22 conditions, including any terms that pertain to the type

1 of license, field of use, and scope. So that isn't
2 financial, right?

3 MS. WALCOFF: Are we trying to identify -- you
4 say we're trying to identify where licenses are. Does
5 that necessarily follow that because a company that holds
6 a patent has licensed it to another entity, that they
7 would naturally license it further? I mean, aren't we
8 trying to figure out who the patent holders are?

9 DR. EVANS: Well, what we're really trying to
10 do with this, I think, is find out who it's been licensed
11 to for what fields of use, right, because that proves to
12 be very hard and it's going to be a big deal as multiplex
13 testing becomes the norm.

14 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: For example, I want to
15 set up a new test and I want to, first of all, you try to
16 figure out if the finding of the gene, there's a gene
17 patent. You normally go to the first original
18 publication and you try to contact the authors there or
19 the university there or whoever is the entity and
20 sometimes you can't find them and you don't know where to
21 go and then from there, they might already have licensing
22 or they might not be willing to tell or not. So it's

1 very hard to find that information.

2 MS. WALCOFF: If you identify the licensee,
3 just that, I mean that's --

4 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Also what they have
5 been licensed for.

6 DR. EVANS: Right. The terms of use, the
7 field.

8 MS. WALCOFF: I was trying to think of a way to
9 get around the fact that people would be sensitive to
10 however we define the use.

11 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Just finding the
12 licensee might be compromised.

13 MS. WALCOFF: Right. That's what I'm
14 suggesting because then you could easily identify just
15 their contact information and then that entity could seek
16 to clarify the terms under which they could use --

17 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: They might decide not
18 to do that and then I try to set up a test and then they
19 contact me to send cease and desist letter.

20 MS. WALCOFF: Right. So you'd avoid a cease
21 and desist because you actually have a clear contact
22 beyond the original patent, but if it doesn't make people

1 nervous about all these other things, they may be
2 required to disclose beyond this is the licensee.

3 MS. ASPINALL: Well, I don't agree with it, but
4 I think that's closer because when you put in any terms
5 that pertain to the type of license, then it says you
6 need to be able to do this much research at this time and
7 keep it exclusive. I mean, there are all sorts of terms
8 that relate to licenses and I did not believe it was the
9 -- well, actually, I wasn't sure what the full intention
10 was, but I think when you have the way it's phrased
11 initially as any terms that go to scope of technologies
12 in the broad second sentence, I think it's very easy to
13 say I've got to make public all the information regarding
14 this license and I did not think that was the committee's
15 intention.

16 DR. EVANS: Okay. I'm trying to make this
17 bigger so that we can --

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Is there a way to
19 dissect all these different terms? I'm doing research
20 for this amount of time or do this data support? That
21 part is not -- but do you still know what you're using
22 the test for, why you're licensing it for? For

1 diagnostic, prognostic and clinical scenario and so
2 forth.

3 DR. EVANS: Okay. So what the heck happened?
4 All right. So trying to work our way towards this,
5 trying to put a little more teeth into it. One way of
6 achieving that would be to use the same wording we did in
7 the last one.

8 We recommend the Secretary explore, identify
9 and implement mechanisms, using her authority and
10 resources, that will make information about patent
11 licenses readily available either by making the signed
12 licenses publicly available or by, and here's where we
13 have to do some wordsmithing, disseminating information
14 about their technology and licensing conditions,
15 including, and you felt like any terms was too broad.

16 What if we said including the type of license
17 or just get rid of any?

18 DR. WILLIAMS: What I would probably do with
19 this is to not be as -- I mean, the first part of it is
20 we're asking her to explore and then we're telling her
21 exactly how to do it in some ways.

22 I would almost say, and it's just at the bare

1 edge of my readability here, so that will make
2 information about patent licenses readily available,
3 period, and then say the information that is necessary
4 because of the concerns referenced in the report are
5 around the field but would not constitute financial.

6 So, in other words, you wouldn't have to
7 articulate everything in the recommendation. You could
8 basically say we're interested in this. We're not
9 interested in that and then expound on it in the report.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Or just indicate that she should
11 develop the elements of the following type.

12 DR. WILLIAMS: Right.

13 DR. EVANS: So something like information
14 needed for greater transparency due to concerns
15 articulated in the report include information about their
16 technology and licensing conditions, licensing
17 conditions, terms that pertain to the type of license,
18 field of use, and the scope of technologies. What about
19 that?

20 DR. DALE: Jim, that phrase at the end, though,
21 "that are still available," doesn't make sense.

22 DR. EVANS: Yes. I just took it out because it

1 didn't make sense with the change there.

2 Now in B, as a means to enhance public access
3 to information about the licensing of patents related to
4 gene-based diagnostics, the Secretary should direct NIH
5 to amend its Best Practices for the Licensing of Genomic
6 Inventions to encourage licensors and -- encourage again,
7 to include in their license contracts a provision that
8 allows each party to disclose information about its
9 licenses.

10 So should we say here the Secretary should
11 direct NIH to amend its Best Practices for the Licensing
12 of Genomic Inventions to require?

13 DR. WILLIAMS: Would it be appropriate just to
14 ask the Secretary for the NIH to revisit its
15 recommendations to specifically address this point and
16 then bring those forward, I mean, as opposed to saying
17 this is exactly what should be done? Are we absolutely
18 certain that that's exactly what should be done or should
19 we give NIH -- let them use their expertise.

20 DR. EVANS: Or we could say the Secretary
21 should consider directing the NIH to require blah-blah-
22 blah.

1 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I was just wondering, actually,
2 since, in the first part of this, it's been changed to
3 explore all of the authorities, then I would think that
4 this becomes a little bit moot in terms of that would be
5 done in the course of doing the first part and so again I
6 think that it needs to be explored and there would be a
7 lot of questions that the NIH would have about doing
8 that.

9 So certainly changing it to a consider, if it's
10 going to go beyond encourage, I think there are
11 definitely --

12 DR. WILLIAMS: So B would move to the report as
13 part of the explication about the different opportunities
14 that could potentially be looked at and, yes, I agree, I
15 think it is redundant. I would just take B out and move
16 it to the report.

17 DR. EVANS: So, okay, we're talking about then
18 moving this sentence maybe with exactly or close to that
19 wording to the report in the context or in the discussion
20 of this recommendation, right?

21 DR. RODRIGUEZ: Right. Because I don't know
22 that there is existing authority to do this.

1 DR. EVANS: Right. And that you have to
2 explore that which we kind of say. Okay. All right.

3 So other comments about this? All right.

4 DR. WILLIAMS: So B is out then?

5 DR. EVANS: B moves to the report. So the vote
6 then would be, unless somebody -- here, let me get it up
7 here.

8 We recommend that the Secretary explore,
9 identify and implement mechanisms, using her authority
10 and resources, that will make information about patent
11 licenses readily available. The information needed for
12 greater transparency due to concerns articulated in the
13 report include information about technology and licensing
14 conditions, terms that pertain to the type of license,
15 field of use, and the scope of technologies.

16 Okay. So all those in favor.

17 [Show of hands.]

18 DR. EVANS: Okay. All right. Moving on, we
19 can get rid of that. All right.

20 Advisory board. All right. To assess the
21 impact of gene patenting and licensing practices. The
22 Secretary should establish an advisory board which would

1 be available to provide ongoing advice about the public
2 health impact of gene patenting and licensing practices.

3 This advisory board would also be available to
4 receive any reports of problems in patient access to
5 genetic tests from the public and medical community. The
6 board then could review new data collected on patient
7 access and assess the extent to which access problems are
8 occurring.

9 One of the board's missions would also be to
10 recommend what information should be systematically
11 collected through iEdison so that iEdison can be used to
12 research questions about licensing, including whether the
13 licensing of genomic inventions has been conducted in
14 accordance with NIH's Best Practices for the Licensing of
15 Genomic Inventions.

16 The advisory board also could provide input on
17 the implementation of any future policy changes,
18 including the other proposed recommendations in the
19 report.

20 Basically what this is saying is -- this arose
21 because there seemed to be frustration that there was
22 kind of a vacuum there, that if people perceived

1 problems, they didn't know where to go. There wasn't any
2 mechanism and this would take care of that.

3 Barbara.

4 MS. McGRATH: I think, just to make it simple,
5 I would keep the first sentence and then cut out
6 everything and then go down to the last sentence, the
7 advisory board also should provide, and then just have
8 that be the recommendation and then in the text, since
9 there's a lot of discussion about who should be at the
10 table on this committee and other places, maybe specify a
11 list of potential stakeholders that would be part of that
12 advisory board.

13 DR. EVANS: I'm all for simplifying because my
14 eyes glaze over when I see a recommendation like this.
15 So tell me again your specific --

16 MS. McGRATH: I just end up with two sentences,
17 the first and the last.

18 DR. EVANS: So the Secretary should establish
19 an advisory board which would be available to provide
20 ongoing advice about the public health impact of gene
21 patenting and licensing practices. The advisory board
22 also could provide input. Is that what you're saying?

1 MS. McGRATH: Exactly.

2 DR. EVANS: And then what we could do, if this
3 makes sense, is we could try to incorporate in the report
4 these other things.

5 MS. McGRATH: As well as making explicit that
6 the composition of the advisory board would be reflective
7 of all the groups that we've sort of mentioned.

8 DR. EVANS: Okay. So in the report, then
9 insert a discussion along the following lines which also
10 includes suggestions about the composition of such a
11 board and then put --

12 MS. WALCOFF: So would this be an advisory
13 committee, in addition to SACGHS, or also --

14 DR. EVANS: Yes. I don't think this would be
15 SACGHS.

16 DR. WILLIAMS: I was going to -- I think I'm
17 going where you are, which is advisory has a very
18 specific meaning, I think, in the context of the
19 Secretary. So I had that question which was would that
20 in fact be us.

21 The second question is whether there would be
22 expertise from -- would it somehow be an

1 interdepartmental board because we've already
2 acknowledged that there are different people that hold
3 different pieces of this puzzle.

4 And the third point is that in our
5 recommendation, I think it was Number 3 maybe, we do
6 establish or recommend establishing another group to
7 explore best practices. So in some sense, could we look
8 at folding this into that? Would that be a potential --
9 because again, I don't think we should necessarily have
10 recommendations for 15 new committees or boards, et
11 cetera.

12 DR. EVANS: Right. So that makes sense.

13 MS. WALCOFF: And also, I like your idea of the
14 interdepartmental workgroup to continue to look at these
15 issues.

16 DR. EVANS: So what we could do -- so this now
17 is something --

18 MS. WALCOFF: Your five-year tenure will end.

19 DR. EVANS: That's right, that's right.
20 Exactly, exactly. So what we could -- in this wording,
21 which we'll figure out, that will go in the report that
22 won't be in the recommendation, help me out here.

1 You're saying we could discuss the need for
2 interdepartmental membership. We could also --

3 MS. WALCOFF: I think it would be an advisory
4 board then. I think it would be more of like an
5 interdepartmental workgroup or committee. I mean, there
6 are technical terms for those.

7 DR. EVANS: Okay.

8 MS. WALCOFF: Maybe we could just find those
9 out.

10 MS. CARR: Are you suggesting feds only? An
11 internal working group?

12 MS. WALCOFF: Are we suggesting feds only?
13 That's what I was thinking, but I don't know.

14 MS. CARR: This was outside, I think, outside
15 advisors.

16 MS. WALCOFF: Okay. I guess when you mentioned
17 the point about needing advice from the other implicated
18 departments, my mind went to feds only, but maybe so.

19 I mean, is there something between a
20 departmental working group and an advisory board because
21 the chartering of an advisory board just kind of looks
22 like we're duplicating ourselves.

1 DR. EVANS: Yes.

2 MS. DARIEN: Can't you just call it an advisory
3 body and then allow it to be constituted the way that it
4 should be constituted?

5 DR. EVANS: As long as we discuss like whether
6 it should be interdepartmental advisory body, which would
7 be more intentionally vague, and let her --

8 MS. CARR: It could be inside or outside.
9 You're not going to specify your wishes in that regard.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: You need to talk about who it's
11 advisory to. This one was advisory to the Secretary.

12 MS. CARR: But if it's interdepartmental, then
13 it may have more than one advisor.

14 DR. TEUTSCH: Right. Well, here because Number
15 8 refers to a group that's advisory to the Patent Office.

16 DR. EVANS: Yes. I mean, my assumption with
17 this would be that it was an advisory body that would
18 report to her. Do we need to say that?

19 MS. CARR: I think you're focused on the public
20 health impact here, so perhaps you could have
21 interdepartmental but still reporting to the Secretary of
22 Health.

1 DR. EVANS: Do we need to say that? That's the
2 question. Should such an advisory board or body be
3 reportable to her or do we need to get there? At this
4 point, I'm going to leave that off for a moment.

5 I was going to mention, I was going to put down
6 here -- I'm sensitive to the idea that, oh, go ahead and
7 create another board, another advisory body, when think
8 about what our committee does, right. It's supposed to
9 address issues of genetics, health, and society. We're
10 talking about gene patents here.

11 It does seem to me that it might not be
12 illogical to suggest that there could be a role for this
13 committee as this. I mean, we've got interdepartmental
14 input, et cetera. Does that make sense?

15 MS. WALCOFF: Sadly, it does.

16 DR. EVANS: Sadly, it does, yes.

17 MS. WALCOFF: Maybe we're just thinking of ways
18 --

19 PARTICIPANT: Still not fully representative.

20 DR. EVANS: Right. So we could discuss
21 interdepartmental membership. We could even say that
22 others could be brought into it. We could also suggest

1 it might be a role.

2 MS. WALCOFF: Is it an advisory group that
3 really would be advising the SACGHS?

4 DR. EVANS: No. I mean, my reason for bringing
5 it up is the idea that it seems a rather natural function
6 of this committee, not a group that would advise this
7 committee, but kind of a function of this committee.

8 MS. WALCOFF: Are you still trying to get into
9 the broad -- some way to enable broader membership in
10 terms of views that we might --

11 DR. TEUTSCH: Is this where public/private
12 partnership can look at these issues and bringing
13 recommendations on technologies and changes to the
14 appropriate public or private bodies?

15 MS. WALCOFF: Right. Because then we could vet
16 it.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: We've done that in some of the
18 other things when we've talked about --

19 DR. WILLIAMS: In the oversight report, we
20 recommended constituting that.

21 I mean, I didn't want to necessarily substitute
22 one buzz word for another, but I think I'm envisioning

1 that it needs to have representation from within the
2 federal government and then it needs to have outside
3 representation, as well, and again I'm going to reflect
4 back just to try and simplify things, that if we're
5 recommending we create whatever this body is, that we
6 task it to do several things.

7 This. We task it to look at the best
8 practices, which was represented, I think, in
9 Recommendation 3, that that should be pulled into this,
10 and if there's any subsequent recommendations that talk
11 about forming a group, that they be given charge over all
12 of this.

13 DR. TEUTSCH: And 8, the one that deals with
14 the PTO.

15 DR. EVANS: Right. So, okay, now this is --
16 just bear with me because I'm trying to piece together
17 these various ideas. So again, the recommendation, as
18 we've got it now, is just this very first part, per
19 Barbara's recommendation or suggestion.

20 In the report, we would then discuss those
21 issues, like iEdison and all, and then to try to get to
22 what we're talking about here, we could discuss the need

1 for interdepartmental membership, representation from a
2 broad array of experts and stakeholders, and the nature
3 of membership. We could also suggest it might be a role
4 for SACGHS.

5 Does that get what we're talking about?

6 DR. DALE: Jim, another structural way would be
7 that there become over time, as this field evolves,
8 standing subcommittees of this committee.

9 DR. EVANS: That's a good point, and we could
10 discuss that in the report.

11 DR. DALE: And then we wouldn't spend quite as
12 much time around this table talking about details but
13 rather receive reports.

14 DR. EVANS: Right. And we can include in that
15 verbiage, we'll figure out in the report, and there might
16 be a role for standing subcommittees of the SACGHS.

17 DR. WILLIAMS: Chaired in perpetuity by Dr.
18 James Evans.

19 DR. EVANS: No, thanks. I think I have some
20 kind of conflict of interest or financial impropriety or
21 something.

22 All right. So let me read the actual

1 recommendation.

2 The Secretary should establish an advisory body
3 which would be available to provide ongoing advice about
4 the public health impact of gene patenting and licensing
5 practices. The advisory board also could provide input
6 on the implementation of any future policy changes,
7 including the other proposed recommendations in this
8 report, and then within the report, we would talk about
9 the composition, the need for interdepartmental
10 membership and a broad array of experts. We could
11 suggest the possibility that it's an appropriate role for
12 SACGHS perhaps with the standing subcommittee.

13 Oh, okay. Gotta change the boards to bodies.
14 All right. This is body. All right.

15 All in favor of this recommendation and the
16 attendant insertions into the report.

17 [Show of hands.]

18 DR. TEUTSCH: 13, one abstention, one no.

19 DR. EVANS: Okay. Federal efforts to promote
20 broad licensing and patient access.

21 "The Secretary shall encourage federal agencies
22 within the Department of Health and Human Services to

1 undertake the following actions: (a) federal agencies
2 should promote wider adoption of the principles reflected
3 in the best practices and OECD guidelines, both of which
4 encourage limited use" -- is this redundant? -- "and (b)
5 federal agencies should encourage wider use of the nine
6 points to consider in licensing university technology."

7 Points 2 and 9, including their explanatory
8 text, are particularly relevant. For example, the
9 explanatory test under Point 2 recognizes that "licenses
10 should not hinder clinical research, professional
11 education and training used by public health authorities,
12 independent validation of test results for quality
13 verification and/or control."

14 So the question would be, as I read these
15 again, are these redundant?

16 DR. WILLIAMS: Yes. Fold it into the previous
17 one.

18 DR. EVANS: All right. So the motion is to
19 fold this into the recommendations, or to fold it into
20 the discussion that refers to the recommendation?

21 DR. WILLIAMS: Into the discussions first.

22 DR. EVANS: That's what I would think, too.

1 Okay, good. So the consensus, if people agree, is fold
2 this verbiage into the report's discussion of Rec 3.

3 Yes, okay. Are people okay with that? I don't
4 think we need an actual vote on that.

5 Federal efforts. This is continued, and I
6 think it's going to be the same thing: "Federal agencies
7 should explore whether approaches to addressing patent
8 thickets" -- okay, this is a little different. This
9 might be a separate recommendation -- "to explore patent
10 pools, clearinghouses and cross-licensing agreements to
11 facilitate the development of multiplex tests for whole-
12 genome sequencing."

13 DR. WILLIAMS: So to me, this would fall under
14 the purview of Recommendation 5, where we create this
15 group that is exploring it. This is a really important
16 issue, I think, that we need to explore in much greater
17 detail. This would be one more thing I would task that
18 group to explicitly explore.

19 DR. EVANS: So the suggestion, then, is to fold
20 this into the report where we discuss the advisory body,
21 right? Are people okay with that? I mean, I like the
22 fact that we're making this simpler.

1 Licensing policies governing federally-funded
2 research to facilitate access. So this is now a shift
3 and a totally different issue. Because it is unclear
4 whether the Bayh-Dole Act gives agencies authority to
5 influence how grantees license patented inventions, the
6 Secretary should seek clarification about this legal
7 question.

8 "If it is determined that such authority
9 exists, the Secretary should promulgate regulations that
10 enable the Department's agencies to limit the ability of
11 grantees to exclusively license inventions resulting from
12 government funding when they are licensed for the genetic
13 diagnostic field of use."

14 Exceptions should also be allowed if a grantee
15 can show that an exclusive license is more appropriate in
16 a particular case. For example, because of high costs of
17 developing the test.

18 The Secretary should also direct NIH to make
19 compliance with NIH's Best Practices for the Licensing of
20 Genomic Inventions an important consideration in future
21 grant awards, and let me see. There was something --
22 okay.

1 And the question was should the below sentence
2 from this recommendation be deleted, modified, or left
3 the same, and that is that last sentence.

4 DR. WILLIAMS: The last sentence really relates
5 to what we were talking about in terms of exploring
6 different options. So that should go into the report
7 relevant to, I think, Recommendation 3.

8 DR. EVANS: I agree. So I think what Marc is
9 saying is that this should be inserted into the report
10 where we discuss Recommendation 3, okay, and this stands
11 on its own as a recommendation that basically calls for a
12 clarification of legal question. Does that make sense to
13 people?

14 MS. WALCOFF: I just want to make sure I'm
15 clear. So in terms of the clarification of the legal
16 question, but then we had discussed earlier, and this is
17 what you just said, Marc, folding the rest of that into
18 the earlier -- or are you still saying --

19 DR. WILLIAMS: Actually just referring to the
20 last sentence be folded, but I think that, as I was
21 listening to this again, we're sort of presuming in the
22 recommendation that we think we know what they're going

1 to find and here's some things that you could do.

2 I would basically limit the recommendation to
3 just say seek clarification on this and then you could
4 put again in the text of the report here are some of the
5 specific issues that are coming up that we need
6 clarification about. So I don't think we need to clutter
7 the recommendation per se with all the rest of it.

8 DR. EVANS: So you're saying --

9 MS. WALCOFF: It's really just the first
10 sentence?

11 DR. WILLIAMS: Yes

12 DR. EVANS: Yes. So you're saying take this
13 and fold it into the report, as well.

14 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I would just agree with that
15 because I think otherwise that language is premature
16 before we have --

17 DR. EVANS: That makes sense. Okay. All
18 right.

19 DR. RODRIGUEZ: I also just a question on the
20 last sentence that was suggested to be moved under the
21 discussion for Recommendation 3 because again that's
22 directive in the sense that the committee's stating that

1 this should happen with regard to making the best
2 practices a condition related to grant award, and we're
3 saying, as it goes into under 3, it will be something
4 that's explored.

5 DR. EVANS: I'm sorry. I was preoccupied. Say
6 that again.

7 DR. RODRIGUEZ: The sentence that Marc
8 suggested be moved under Recommendation 3 about where the
9 committee states that they should direct NIH to make
10 compliance with the best practices related to
11 consideration for future grant awards, that would now be
12 more conditional under Recommendation 3 where there's --
13 the actual recommendation is to explore the authorities
14 that are possible.

15 DR. EVANS: Right.

16 DR. RODRIGUEZ: So this response statement
17 would not be there.

18 DR. EVANS: As a condition of that discussion
19 of Recommendation 3. Is that what you're saying?

20 DR. RODRIGUEZ: Right. So that I think there's
21 a question to be asked and answered with whether or not
22 that authority exists.

1 MS. CARR: May I just ask you, though, could
2 you not also put it under -- as part of what's left of
3 this recommendation because isn't one of the issues here
4 whether NIH or the Secretary has authority to --

5 DR. RODRIGUEZ: Right. I think it's related to
6 clarifying.

7 MS. CARR: It is. So it would stay here with
8 this recommendation.

9 DR. WILLIAMS: I'm not sure, Sarah, because
10 this is really -- as I understand it, this is relating to
11 that we're suggesting that we explore whether this should
12 be an element that would be part of the grant review and
13 scoring process in terms of -- that's how I read this and
14 if that's the case, that's not Bayh-Dole, is it?

15 DR. EVANS: Well, yes, I think that the
16 question is does Bayh-Dole allow her to use that
17 information, right, and, if so, what we're saying is then
18 she should direct the NIH to make compliance with it a
19 condition of granting.

20 So I actually do think this probably belongs in
21 the discussion of this recommendation.

22 DR. WILLIAMS: Okay. All right.

1 DR. RODRIGUEZ: It's relevant to both
2 recommendations because it will depend on the answers in
3 exploring her authorities under Recommendation 3 and the
4 analysis of Bayh-Dole.

5 MS. CARR: Actually, isn't this, the first part
6 of this, of Number 7, like the most overarching thing for
7 what's now Number 3?

8 DR. WILLIAMS: That was the question that I was
9 wondering now, too.

10 DR. EVANS: Yes.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: In some sense, as we look at the
12 ordering of the recommendations, that this may proceed
13 because that may well define what is within purview and
14 what isn't.

15 DR. EVANS: Yes. So maybe we need to --

16 MS. CARR: I think this falls after 3, I think,
17 because 3 has the possibility of affecting people that
18 interact with fundees. So 3 might affect more people
19 than --

20 DR. EVANS: So we can discuss this. Okay. I'm
21 pointing on the computer. You guys probably can't see
22 that. Okay. So we could discuss this in relation to

1 this, but we could also emphasize its relevance to 3 and
2 put them together, yes, yes, and so put 3 and current 7
3 adjacent. I don't want to make a mistake and think we're
4 fusing them. Right? Okay.

5 All right. So are people okay with this? This
6 then would be the recommendation.

7 Because it is unclear whether the Bayh-Dole Act
8 gives agencies authority to influence how grantees
9 license patented inventions, the Secretary should seek
10 clarification about this legal question.

11 Then in the report, we would discuss this issue
12 of using that authority to influence funding decisions as
13 we discuss this recommendation and then we would take
14 this information where we discuss Recommendation 3 about
15 promulgating regulations that enable the department's
16 agencies to limit ability of grantees to exclusively
17 license.

18 All right. All in favor.

19 [Show of hands.]

20 DR. EVANS: Okay. All right. I know. We have
21 6D, right. I'm aware of that. All right. Let's just
22 keep going and then we'll go back. Okay. So you think

1 we're on the last slide but we're really now. We have to
2 go back to one more.

3 8. Providing needed expertise to USPTO. This
4 is something we asked the USPTO representative about. As
5 I recall, the comment was we'll take all the advice we
6 can get. I don't want to put words in their mouth, but I
7 don't want to overstep bounds either.

8 I don't want to say -- I don't want to force an
9 advisory kind of board on USPTO if they don't want it or
10 don't need it, but that was not my sense from the Task
11 Force, just to get that out there.

12 So this says that the Secretary should
13 recommend that the Secretary of Commerce advise the USPTO
14 to establish an advisory committee to provide advice
15 about scientific and technological developments related
16 to genetic tests and technologies that may inform its
17 examination of patent applications in the realm of human
18 genes.

19 The committee believes experts in the field
20 should help USPTO in its development of guidelines on
21 determinations of non-obviousness and subject matter
22 eligibility in this field once pending court decisions,

1 such as Bilski v. Kappos, are decided.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: So again, it seems to me that
3 this would be a role that could be defined under that
4 previous group.

5 DR. EVANS: Yes.

6 MS. DREYFUSS: I thought that this group is
7 really about scientists, that it's the scientific advice
8 that we're wanting to give the PTO rather than the
9 stakeholder kind of advice.

10 DR. EVANS: That's a good point.

11 MS. DREYFUSS: I mean maybe we want to do that
12 other thing, but --

13 DR. EVANS: Because we are talking about
14 scientific and technological development.

15 MS. DREYFUSS: I thought it was that, but maybe
16 a bigger role would make some sense.

17 MS. WALCOFF: Does OSTP advise USPTO, at the
18 risk of using a billion letters there?

19 DR. EVANS: I'm confused.

20 MS. WALCOFF: The White House Office of
21 Science, Technology, and Policy advise the USPTO.

22 DR. EVANS: I don't know.

1 MS. WALCOFF: The Patent and Technology Office.
2 I mean, I'm wondering if that already exists and maybe
3 there just needs to --

4 MS. DREYFUSS: I was at a National Academy's
5 committee once and we explored this question of who gives
6 advice to the PTO and the PTO at that time was saying
7 that they really would like more advice than they
8 actually get, that they're left sort of on their own
9 quite a bit, but that was about avenues for finding out
10 more scientific information rather than information about
11 sort of the economic value of patents and things like
12 that.

13 I mean, if you think about a broader committee,
14 it would be about the economic place of patents in the
15 overall system of promoting innovation, but that's not
16 what I know the PTO wants. What the PTO has said it
17 wants is more actual science, scientists who actually
18 understand where the technology is right now, how much
19 this new advance really is different from something that
20 a person of ordinary skill in the art could have done,
21 how broad is the technology, how broad are the claims,
22 and really science-type questions.

1 MS. WALCOFF: Right. It seems like, I mean,
2 they can certainly ask the White House for that kind of
3 information and that kind of focus, I know, for OSTP. So
4 I'm wondering in terms of recommending to another
5 Secretary to do something, I'm just thinking is there a
6 possible way to alert to existing resources and suggest
7 that those be drawn upon or that they expand what OSTP is
8 currently looking at.

9 MS. DREYFUSS: OSTP is more science policy.
10 It's more science policy role than what's the actual
11 science of this widget technology.

12 DR. EVANS: My initial reaction, as we were
13 discussing this in the Task Force, was kind of, I
14 thought, well, you know, this probably exists and do they
15 really want the advice, but as we queried the USPTO, that
16 didn't seem to be the case. So this did seem, kind of to
17 my surprise, as something that would be welcomed.

18 DR. BILLINGS: But do we want them to establish
19 an advisory committee or do we want them to take heed of
20 these issues that we've raised and change patenting
21 policy?

22 DR. EVANS: Well, we're trying to help them do

1 that. I mean, this, I think, actually is not designed to
2 change patenting policy. This one. I mean, we certainly
3 have ones in there that are, but this one, I think, is
4 saying, look, it's a rapidly-moving field, both
5 technologically and legally. It would behoove the
6 Secretary or it would behoove everybody if the Patent
7 Office had some technical experts that were on call to --

8 DR. BILLINGS: But we're not the only field
9 that has this issue, right?

10 DR. EVANS: That's what I said. That's what I
11 said when we were discussing this and to my surprise, and
12 it sounds like Rochelle got the same reaction, the USPTO
13 is like, yes, we'll take that. So this surprised me and
14 I don't want to put words in their mouth, but I
15 understand your reaction, I had the same reaction, but it
16 sounds like -- and what we could say, we could use Gwen's
17 recommendation. We could leave it looser and say an
18 advisory body.

19 DR. BILLINGS: How about advisors?

20 MS. WALCOFF: Making it so siloed, I mean maybe
21 this should be something where USPTO and the science
22 advisors are all with this interdepartmental, whatever we

1 decided to call that earlier, group and then everyone's
2 talking to everyone, instead of creating a lot of
3 independent bodies that do exactly what we do.

4 DR. EVANS: Yes. Again, that's interesting.
5 The only issue with that is that, as Rochelle points out,
6 the intent of this was to try to really hone down on the
7 technical issues in this rapidly-changing field in light
8 of -- things like non-obviousness are a very technical
9 issue. Is it obvious to a person versed in the art?

10 So the only problem with kind of folding this
11 into that previous body is that that has all this
12 membership of policy people and we're talking here about
13 science.

14 MS. DREYFUSS: Part of the problem the PTO has
15 is that for each new science, they really need new
16 advisors. So you can't have like a standing committee
17 that's going to help them because the next science, the
18 next new thing, we have no nano technologists here, even
19 though who knows what nano technology could do for
20 genetics. So they really need the kind of people that
21 will help point them to the right people to ask about new
22 things because if they just chose somebody, they could

1 choose the right person, they could choose the wrong
2 person. If a stakeholder tells them to choose somebody,
3 you always wonder whether that's a biased person. So
4 sort of a neutral advisory committee to help them kind of
5 ferret out who the right people to talk to is more along
6 the lines of what I was thinking about, the way I
7 understood what they wanted.

8 MS. WALCOFF: You want to identify experts?

9 DR. EVANS: No. Advisory committee to provide
10 advice. So I think what we would want to say is perhaps
11 establish a body of scientists or technical experts to
12 provide advice about scientific and technological
13 developments.

14 MS. WALCOFF: Rochelle said we don't want a
15 standing committee.

16 DR. DALE: I was going to suggest something a
17 little short of that and that is, that the Secretary
18 explore a liaison relationship with this committee, with
19 the Patent Office, on issues related to genetic
20 technologies and then see where that goes.

21 DR. EVANS: Yes. I like explore because I
22 think there's enough uncertainty around the table here

1 that we're not sure we want to say you gotta do this. So
2 help me out. Something like this.

3 Advise USPTO to explore the establishment of a
4 -- and now you're going to see my horrible spelling.

5 MS. CARR: We actually already have a
6 representative. Michael Amos is from the Department of
7 Commerce. He sits on this committee. He's from NIST.

8 DR. EVANS: Between this committee and USPTO.

9 MS. CARR: Were we thinking of something more
10 than that?

11 DR. DALE: It could be more specific. We could
12 leave that to the Secretary and the Patent Office.

13 DR. EVANS: What if we say the Secretary and
14 the Secretary of Commerce should explore? Can we say
15 that?

16 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Do we have an idea how
17 often they would need this advice? I mean, is it
18 something that we need? So that's what I mean. Do we
19 need a different kind of advisory group?

20 MS. DREYFUSS: Think about this. The USPTO's
21 granting these patents on gene sequences long after
22 sequencing was really easy to do and they were still

1 granting them up to, what, last year when the federal
2 circuit finally said wait, maybe not. That's a kind of a
3 problem and at the same time as our committee's doing
4 this, there's also a committee exploring how much the PTO
5 should be owed deference by the federal circuit so that
6 when the PTO says something is obvious, the federal
7 circuit would then pretty much have to say, unless
8 there's some clear reason to think it's wrong, we're
9 going with the PTO's decision.

10 So that kind of thing happens fairly often.
11 Technology is patenting, patenting, patenting. Nobody's
12 saying wait a minute, everything in this field has
13 changed. There's now 10,000 machines that do all of this
14 automatically. You don't need patenting anymore. So
15 that's the advantage of a continuing relationship. So I
16 like the liaison idea.

17 DR. EVANS: Look. I spelled liaison right.

18 MS. DREYFUSS: The second time around.

19 DR. EVANS: With Spell Check. Okay. So what
20 about this? Again, just throwing this out there, I don't
21 know if I've captured what people want. Let me get it
22 here.

1 The Secretary should explore with the Secretary
2 of Commerce, because that's necessary because of the
3 USPTO, a liaison relationship between this committee and
4 the USPTO which would provide advice about scientific and
5 technological developments related to genetic tests and
6 technologies that may inform its examination of patent
7 applications in the realm of human genes.

8 The committee believes experts in the field
9 could help USPTO in its development of guidelines on
10 determinations of non-obviousness and subject matter
11 eligibility in this field, once pending court decisions
12 are --

13 MS. DREYFUSS: How about provide advice or that
14 would recommend advisors?

15 DR. EVANS: Okay. So you're saying that this
16 committee would recommend advisors?

17 MS. DREYFUSS: If the PTO is having trouble
18 identifying people.

19 DR. EVANS: Forget the liaisons?

20 MS. DREYFUSS: "Provide advice and identify
21 advisors."

22 DR. EVANS: "Would provide advice" --

1 MS. DREYFUSS: "And recommend."

2 DR. EVANS: -- "and recommend technical
3 advisors" -- I'm losing it here -- "and recommend
4 technical advisors who would provide" -- say what? --
5 "would provide input about scientific and technological
6 developments related to genetics." Okay.

7 DR. BILLINGS: You could take the second
8 sentence out.

9 DR. EVANS: This might go in the report. Okay,
10 so in the report's discussion of this rec.

11 So what we've got, at this point, is: "The
12 Secretary should explore, with the Secretary of Commerce,
13 a liaison relationship between this committee and the
14 USPTO, which would provide advice and recommend technical
15 advisors who would provide input about scientific and
16 technological developments related to genetic tests and
17 technologies that may inform its examination of patent
18 applications."

19 It could use a little tweaking, which, we can
20 tweak this so it doesn't sound like William Faulkner on
21 drugs. One bestial sentence, then in the report we would
22 discuss those things.

1 Do we have approval for this? Approved? Okay.

2 So 6D is the last one. We really are about there.

3 Somehow I spaced this out. Are we done with that?

4 [Recommendation] 6D, all right. "Federal
5 agencies should provide more detailed guidance regarding
6 the licensing of patents associated with genetic tests.
7 In particular, this guidance should encourage the use of
8 terms in licensing agreements, particularly those with
9 exclusivity, increasing the number of insurers that
10 reimburse for the test or improving the specificity and
11 sensitivity, or examples of milestones that a license
12 could be required to meet, or to earn or to maintain
13 license rights."

14 So what this is saying is that there should be
15 more guidance about the kinds of milestones that need to
16 be adhered to in terms. Does this rise to the level of a
17 recommendation? Is this something that should be in the
18 report?

19 MS. DREYFUSS: A different question. What
20 about the recommendations that Sheila started with, about
21 more ways of getting funding for sole-source tests or for
22 poor people?

1 MS. WALCOFF: I'm reading this differently, as
2 increasing the number of insurers that reimburse for the
3 test; whose responsibility would that be.

4 DR. EVANS: Yes.

5 MS. WALCOFF: That's a milestone for the
6 company.

7 DR. EVANS: Well, that came up with
8 discussions. Again, look what Myriad's done. They've
9 been able to steadily increase the number of payers
10 that --

11 MS. WALCOFF: I think everybody would like to
12 have more payers.

13 DR. EVANS: Right, right.

14 MS. WALCOFF: But all those individual contract
15 negotiations, and I am not sure that we're not reaching,
16 a little bit, into that with something like this.

17 DR. EVANS: Yes.

18 MS. WALCOFF: I think what you were thinking
19 of, Rochelle, was related but different on the other
20 side. We don't have a reimbursement recommendation, and
21 that seems to be, to me, the biggest crux of this report.

22 DR. WILLIAMS: I would say two things. One is,

1 this specific recommendation isn't specific enough to
2 what the Secretary can and can't do and includes some
3 things that I think the Secretary really does not have.
4 I mean, federal agencies. The only federal agencies
5 would be the ones that are actually under Department of
6 Health and Human Services.

7 MS. WALCOFF: Which would mean CMS.

8 DR. WILLIAMS: The other issue is that the
9 report that we have issued on reimbursement, there is no
10 reason why we couldn't include language, as we have done
11 in other instances, that says we have addressed a number
12 of issues relating to reimbursement of genetic tests.
13 The patenting issues that are outlined in this report are
14 another impediment to this, but an overall solution to
15 reimbursement reflecting these previous recommendations
16 is still needed.

17 MS. WALCOFF: Isn't it direct to the whole
18 patient access issue? I mean, it seems like a lot of
19 this report talked about reimbursement and the resulting
20 challenges in reimbursement on patient access.

21 DR. WILLIAMS: I'll speak for Sam since he
22 can't speak. He is not fully vetted. I think I'm

1 vaccinated against what he's not vetted for, but I'm not
2 sure.

3 The issue from the payer perspective is that
4 they would not equate reimbursement with access. They
5 would say that patients always have the ability to access
6 services if they're willing to pay out of pocket. So
7 then it refers to issues of health and equity, and then
8 you say, well, yes, we understand the healthcare system
9 is inequitable in the way it's currently configured.

10 Is it our job to solve all the problems of the
11 healthcare system, or are there specific issues here that
12 are very narrow that do in fact impact access and
13 reimbursement?

14 MS. WALCOFF: It sounded like Medicaid was that
15 issue.

16 DR. WILLIAMS: I didn't bring this up because I
17 really didn't want to muddy the waters, but the reality
18 with Medicaid is that each state defines its benefits.
19 In the State of Utah, the benefit package says, we do not
20 cover genetic tests. It's not a contracting issue.

21 DR. EVANS: In many, many states, it is.

22 DR. WILLIAMS: But in other states it is. I'm

1 just saying that we shouldn't delude ourselves into
2 thinking that somehow the Secretary can do something in
3 the Medicaid system that is going to fix it.

4 The other point I would make is that, while
5 Myriad has in some ways solved the Medicare problem, the
6 way they solved it was in a very unique way. They are
7 located in Utah. They went to the Medicare carrier for
8 the State of Utah, and that carrier issued a local
9 medical decision that covered that testing. What they
10 have told every other Medicare carrier is that, because
11 we're located in Utah, this is covered by all Medicare.

12 DR. EVANS: Well, and I think also what was on
13 their side was that it became more and more clinically
14 useful.

15 DR. WILLIAMS: Well, I'm not disagreeing with
16 that, but I'm saying that the mechanism by which that
17 reimbursement was accomplished was basically by playing
18 some of the little funny issues about how Medicare's
19 actually administered at the state level. So again to
20 presume that somehow this happened because of a national
21 fiat is delusional.

22 DR. EVANS: So we've got to get back to 6D.

1 The question is is there a role for a recommendation,
2 that there is a need for more detailed guidance regarding
3 licensing of patents, about terms in licensing
4 agreements, et cetera, and, if so, does that rise to the
5 level of a recommendation or should this be basically a
6 part of the report?

7 DR. WILLIAMS: I mean, it seems to me that this
8 is one more part of exploration of what can we do around
9 this and is there guidance needed? So in some ways,
10 doesn't this reflect a general exploration of this that
11 we referenced under Recommendation 3 or whatever? I
12 mean, I'm not seeing anything necessarily unique or new
13 here.

14 DR. EVANS: That's kind of my feeling. I mean,
15 my feeling is that this is not too different from the
16 previous recommendation, that it could be folded into the
17 discussion of that recommendation.

18 MS. DREYFUSS: And also, actually, the
19 Recommendation 7 where you're asking for clarification
20 around Bayh-Dole of what licensing terms you can do, so
21 we don't even know yet whether or not we can put forward
22 or we can take forward guidance in this regard.

1 DR. EVANS: Right. In fact, what that leads me
2 to feel like is that perhaps this should be folded into
3 the report where we discuss Recommendation 7.

4 How do people feel about that? All right.
5 Sam?

6 DR. NUSSBAUM: First, I will speak. Marc did a
7 beautiful job in representing a viewpoint of the health
8 insurers, but there is a fundamental issue here that I
9 think needs to be addressed, and that is that if these
10 tests, sole-source or others, become very expensive and
11 they're not covered as benefits, then I think it's
12 important for us to recognize that we have an access
13 issue.

14 While coverage decisions are generally based on
15 science and on clinical results, I think it would be
16 important, somewhere, to write in a review of whether
17 these tests are being offered to communities, to
18 citizens. I think you can do that without trying to
19 mandate what insurers or what Medicaid or Medicare --

20 DR. EVANS: Within the report?

21 DR. NUSSBAUM: I think so.

22 DR. EVANS: Give me some wording. What would

1 you say?

2 DR. NUSSBAUM: I think one would want to look
3 into these. When genetic tests are proven of clinical
4 merit, we would want to be sure that they're provided
5 broadly in insurance policies and in Medicaid/Medicare as
6 payers.

7 I think one of the debates can be that people
8 can write out preventive services. They can write them
9 out, just as we talked about, and I think you would want
10 to be sure that that is not occurring in a drive for
11 affordability.

12 DR. EVANS: Yes. So as genetic tests are
13 incorporated into medical care, it will be important to
14 ensure that they are included in --

15 DR. NUSSBAUM: Benefit structures and coverages
16 by governmental and non-governmental payers and this
17 could be reviewed in a responsible --

18 DR. EVANS: Governmental and non-governmental
19 payers.

20 DR. WILLIAMS: And the other thing we could
21 reference in there is in our letter to the Secretary
22 regarding the reimbursement issues, to kind of update

1 that report and highlight new issues.

2 One of the things that we did specifically talk
3 about was the opening of the Medicare National Coverage
4 Decision and the Medicare Advisory Committee to evidence-
5 based assessment and so some reference to saying that
6 we've mentioned genetics in this context before and this
7 would be another place where this could be -- again, just
8 reinforcing what we've said in numerous other situations.

9 DR. EVANS: Okay.

10 MS. ASPINALL: Can we add a piece here that I
11 had mentioned earlier which is streamlining the process
12 for diagnostics to be able to -- for diagnostic providers
13 to be able to provide -- I don't know if we call it free
14 testing, but testing available to -- well, free testing,
15 for lack of a better word right now, and simplify and
16 streamline that process because right now, as I've heard
17 from physicians at all sorts of institutions, it is
18 considered a kickback. You can't do it and as you
19 described earlier, it's a very cumbersome process today
20 that needs to be streamlined so companies would have the
21 ability to do it.

22 DR. TEUTSCH: Help us focus. What would the

1 Secretary -- what are you advising that the Secretary
2 should do? What would our recommendation be? I think
3 the issues --

4 MS. ASPINALL: The recommendation in the same
5 context of this and reimbursement is to consider -- to
6 explore, understand, and streamline the process for
7 indigent testing.

8 DR. EVANS: I'm not sure if it rises to the
9 level of a formal rec, but what if, in this discussion,
10 in the report, we put as genetic tests are incorporated
11 in medical care, the importance of ensuring they're
12 included in benefit structures covered by governmental
13 and when -- I guess when not covered, that the mechanisms
14 for providing --

15 MS. ASPINALL: Well, you can include in there
16 review the relevant mechanisms for --

17 DR. WILLIAMS: Examine the barriers is what I'm
18 hearing, right?

19 MS. ASPINALL: Yes. To approval, because it's
20 not only one issue and it's, quite frankly, bigger than
21 genetic tests, patented or not, but this is something
22 that has become more of an issue, particularly -- and

1 this was two of the letters that came in to say there's
2 been perceived criticism directly here, saying they're
3 too expensive.

4 One of the ways to deal with access is to allow
5 this to happen.

6 DR. TEUTSCH: Can you write some language?

7 DR. EVANS: That would be great. Could you
8 write something that could go in the report, because I'm
9 not sure how to do that right now.

10 MS. ASPINALL: Yes.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: It fits within the exploration
12 piece, because there are a number of different pieces
13 that roll into this. It has to do with STARK and STARK
14 II.

15 MS. ASPINALL: That's exactly the issue.

16 DR. WILLIAMS: It has to do with the statutory
17 things. I know it's statutory for its rules within
18 Medicaid, that to say, here is what you can or you can't
19 do in terms of discounting.

20 DR. EVANS: I mean, this sounds like a laudable
21 goal. The thing I wonder about is, is it at all unique
22 to genetic testing? It sounds like a very overarching

1 thing.

2 MS. ASPINALL: Well, several of our
3 recommendations are not unique. We talked about genetic
4 exceptionalism, I think, three days ago when we got into
5 this room.

6 DR. EVANS: Come up with something.

7 MS. ASPINALL: Not specific, but it's relevant
8 to the reimbursement piece.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: It's related to the sole sourcing
10 issue, right?

11 MS. ASPINALL: I used it as a sole sourcing
12 issue because it's often used as an example of why sole
13 sources can't do it, but, quite frankly, it's relevant
14 more broadly when you have an indigent patient and you
15 have a test you want to get done.

16 DR. TEUTSCH: So help me here.

17 DR. EVANS: Are we talking about charity care?

18 MS. ASPINALL: I would describe it more broadly
19 and I know patient advocates would not call it charity
20 care. It's for people for whom, for whatever reason,
21 whether they're insured or not, do not have access to the
22 test and for the companies and laboratories, academic,

1 university and otherwise, to have a streamlined process
2 to do it, and to make people aware of what that process
3 is, because unanimously they all complain about that.

4 Sole-source test is one area, but if the test
5 is \$500 at everyone's lab and they can't afford it, it
6 doesn't have to be sole sourced.

7 DR. EVANS: Okay. So Mara will address
8 streamlining the mechanisms by which labs/companies can
9 provide testing when not covered. Is that right?

10 MS. ASPINALL: We can work on the language. I
11 think it's just laboratories. It doesn't matter where
12 they are.

13 DR. EVANS: Got you. Okay.

14 DR. TEUTSCH: Paul.

15 DR. WISE: Paul Wise from Stanford. The last
16 two issues relate to more generic equity issues, and I've
17 kept my mouth shut pretty much all day because, as
18 somebody who focuses on disparity reduction, I was
19 content with the conversation focusing specifically on
20 patent issues.

21 The fact that we're bringing in more generic
22 issues diminishes the equity arguments because it makes

1 it a peripheral clause within a subcategory on one of the
2 less exciting recommendations.

3 If we're going to include this, which I think
4 would be fine, then I would suggest in the recommendation
5 a preamble that says this is merely one component of this
6 committee's concern, or set of recommendations for
7 ensuring equity in the provision of genetic-related tests
8 and services and therapies, period.

9 We would remind the Secretary that earlier
10 reports, like the reimbursement report and other
11 components of equity issues, that have come up in prior
12 things that have not been acted upon are also relevant to
13 this conversation. Then, in an appendix or someplace,
14 list the recommendations that came through the relatively
15 recent reports that address the issue of inequitable
16 provision. Otherwise, my concern is that we're really
17 peripheralizing this issue merely by putting it in in
18 this small way.

19 So my general suggestion would be to have an
20 intro or a preamble.

21 DR. EVANS: So we need to go back and rework
22 the wording of the recommendation here?

1 DR. WISE: Not the recommendation but the set-
2 up of the recommendations, to ensure that the context for
3 this report and its recommendations is really part of a
4 much larger commitment from this committee to equitable
5 provision of relevant tests and services, and reference,
6 if you will, the other relevant recommendations from
7 prior reports that speak to this issue.

8 **Closing Remarks**

9 **Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.**

10 DR. TEUTSCH: I think the hour is late. It
11 seems to me there are a few things.

12 One is that Jim is probably going to have a
13 busy evening.

14 Sam, did you want to say something first?

15 DR. NUSSBAUM: Just again it's because of my
16 newness to the committee and clearly this has been a
17 five-year journey, Jim, that you have led so many of our
18 colleagues on and congratulations, and I would have been
19 voting largely with you, but having said that, at the
20 very beginning there were some really substantive issues,
21 and it seems to me that a minority of the committee and
22 what we heard from public comments are strong views and

1 they're not nuanced views. They're 180-degree viewpoints
2 that are different.

3 I guess the question that I have, since these
4 are complex legal issues that are going to be determined
5 in many ways, perhaps in courts, is there room, in past
6 deliberations by this group, in the body of succinct
7 minority representation, to say, here are some concerns
8 that did exist?

9 Because I think that, while voices have been
10 heard -- we've heard a little bit about balance, we've
11 heard a bit about the evidence -- these are case studies,
12 but the evidence, perhaps, isn't as strong as we would
13 all like, and I just wonder if that's something that
14 would happen or not.

15 DR. EVANS: I guess this is probably a very
16 long discussion. My feeling is this, we don't issue
17 minority reports in this committee, we hash things out.
18 We try to produce as balanced a report as possible that
19 includes various issues.

20 I am not in favor of some kind of minority
21 report that then dilutes what we have had a hard-fought
22 battle to achieve consensus on, and I would say have done

1 so with a relatively decent proportion of the committee
2 that endorses these things. So, no, I'm not in favor.

3 DR. BILLINGS: Is there a precedent?

4 DR. TEUTSCH: I mean, the report can talk about
5 some of the challenges and some of the --

6 DR. EVANS: I think we do. I have been told on
7 numerous occasions that this especially has brought
8 balance, et cetera, et cetera. So I think the place for
9 trying to discuss the controversies is the report.

10 MS. WALCOFF: Has there been a report before,
11 where you have not had unanimous agreement?

12 DR. EVANS: Oh, yes.

13 MS. WALCOFF: Which one? I don't remember one.

14 DR. WILLIAMS: Oversight was clearly not a
15 unanimous report.

16 MS. ASPINALL: I thought, in the end, there
17 were no 'no' votes.

18 DR. NUSSBAUM: I certainly understand that.
19 Perhaps, then it's just writing the final document to
20 include some of those issues in a more direct way.

21 DR. EVANS: I'm very sensitive to that, and we
22 will do that.

1 DR. WILLIAMS: Of course, all of the comments
2 and all of the written public comments, the oral public,
3 they are all available in the public record, and they are
4 all associated with the report.

5 Now, we all recognize that not everybody will
6 read those.

7 DR. EVANS: But, look, that's the way it goes.
8 I mean, I think we have accommodated diverse viewpoints.
9 We have had an extraordinarily open deliberation
10 process. We have had abundant public comments and we've
11 had time for discussion. I think that you can't make
12 everybody happy, and I think you dilute the purpose of
13 the report if you now start issuing alternate minority
14 reports.

15 MS. ASPINALL: Jim, I have to disagree with
16 that. I mean, at least what I heard Sam say is not
17 alternate minority reports in any way, shape or form,
18 because the vast majority of the information and the
19 discussion is there. I was parts of much of it, and part
20 of the team was much of it.

21 I think that there are a couple things. One
22 is, to acknowledge the dissenting views.

1 DR. EVANS: I think we do that in the report.

2 MS. ASPINALL: It was not just one, and I think
3 that that's important. I don't see that in the report
4 today. I didn't see it in the summary slides today.

5 I made a comment earlier that I didn't see the
6 summary slides today truly represent the breadth of view
7 from the public comments, in addition to some factual
8 changes which are relatively small on the piece of it.

9 I think we need to acknowledge that to ensure
10 that that is represented because, while all of this is
11 public, it's not going to get out and people are not
12 going to read the 101st letter, or even the first letter
13 in there.

14 DR. EVANS: I certainly think that we can look
15 at the report to try to make sure again, as we've done
16 the whole process through, to make sure that minority
17 opinions are represented. All right? But they are
18 minority opinions and I do not think that we should delay
19 approval of this entire report --

20 DR. TEUTSCH: Jim, I'm going to step in here
21 because I'm not hearing people say that we should delay
22 approval of the report or the recommendations.

1 What I'm hearing is that some people do not
2 feel that some of these perspectives are represented as
3 well as they might be, not that they need to carry the
4 day -- we've had the discussions -- but as we go through
5 and finalize the report, that we make sure that some of
6 these perspectives are clear and incorporated.

7 I would ask those of you who hold those
8 minority reports to provide us the specific places where
9 you think they don't come out clearly enough --

10 DR. EVANS: With specific wording.

11 DR. TEUTSCH: -- so we can do that, because at
12 the end of the day, we do want people to feel like their
13 voices have been heard and are recognized.

14 And so, I would ask you to please help us with
15 that because I know Jim, to the best of his ability, has
16 listened to this committee, the Task Force, to try and do
17 that. If it is not coming through clearly, please help
18 us do that in specific ways so that we can move it
19 forward.

20 MS. ASPINALL: I appreciate that, because I
21 think Jim has listened, but it was written as the
22 majority, which is the intention.

1 DR. EVANS: This also gets very convoluted
2 because the insertion of certain statements can then
3 change the entire thrust of the report, which then makes
4 the recommendations paradoxical. We have to be very
5 careful.

6 DR. TEUTSCH: No, no, no, no.

7 MS. ASPINALL: Let's issue a majority opinion.
8 That's what holds is a majority opinion, but you see
9 what is the logic that says there's a different way to
10 think about it. We're not saying changing the sense of
11 the report. It is pages and pages and pages.

12 DR. EVANS: As long as we can do it without
13 making the report a disjointed and self-contradictory
14 entity, that's fine.

15 DR. TEUTSCH: No. I think we can do that and I
16 hope we can.

17 MS. ASPINALL: I think therefore having it
18 almost separate is actually a better way to do that, but
19 we can do it as an integrated one.

20 DR. TEUTSCH: There may be notes at the bottom.
21 The committee took note of other opinions. There are
22 ways that we can do that.

1 DR. EVANS: Right. And these were discussions
2 we had at Task Force meetings over and over.

3 MS. ASPINALL: I recognize there was much
4 discussion about it. I acknowledged at the beginning it
5 wasn't that there wasn't much discussion. It's just that
6 the final report, if anything, as one of the public
7 comments made, had hardened in a position that had fewer
8 broader issues discussed.

9 DR. NUSSBAUM: It strikes me that critics and
10 criticism will be muted if in fact the issues are shared.

11 DR. EVANS: I completely agree. I would
12 maintain, and I've had a lot of feedback, that it is
13 balanced. Now, if we can achieve greater balance, that's
14 great. I'm all for it, but I just don't want to gut the
15 report or, essentially, start over.

16 DR. NUSSBAUM: Jim, let me be straight. Again,
17 I read this with a fresh set of eyes, not the five years
18 of intense -- I think it's extremely well done. As I
19 said, there's clarity. Look at the way the vote has come
20 down on the recommendations.

21 I think from what I've heard from the public
22 comment, and as I read it, I thought there could be,

1 particularly since it was case study method, not pure
2 science, there could be a reflection of other viewpoints
3 in it, not mitigating at all the impact of the final
4 discussion.

5 DR. TEUTSCH: All right. We are being told we
6 must leave because they're using this room for another
7 function tonight. So those who are going to the dinner
8 tonight, it's at 6:30. Let's meet in the lobby at 6:15.

9 Jim, if we can get a revision of things we can
10 look at tomorrow. Yes, we're going to come back and
11 review the draft that we had.

12 Finally, take everything with you.

13 [Whereupon, at 6:02 p.m., the meeting was
14 recessed to reconvene the following day.]

15 + + +

CERTIFICATION

This is to certify that the attached proceedings

BEFORE THE: **20th Meeting of the Secretary's Advisory
Committee on Genetics, Health, and Society
(SACGHS)**

HELD: **October 8-9, 2009**

were convened as herein appears, and that this is the official transcript
thereof for the file of the Department or Commission.

SONIA GONZALEZ, Court Reporter